

AL-BAHER

CONNECT

Second Term

الصف الرابع الابتدائي



Parents' Guide

4th

Primary
2024



Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Contents

Theme (3) My society

Unit (7)	This is where I live	(4)
Unit (8)	We had fun	(39)
Unit (9)	What makes us special?	(71)
	Review (3)	(105)

Theme (4) I'm a responsible person

Unit (10)	I enjoy my life	(109)
Unit (11)	What can we do?	(140)
Unit (12)	Fiction reader: Dalia saves the village!	(174)
	Review (4)	(188)
	Listening texts	(190)

Theme (3) My society

مجتمعي



Unit 7

This is where I live

هذا هو المكان الذي أعيش فيه



In this unit students will ...

- read about the Nile and why it is so important.
- talk about my neighborhood in the past and now.
- use regular and irregular past simple verb forms.
- practice the long vowel sounds.
- practice simplifying fractions.
- write about a memory.

Lesson (1)

The Nile

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.

Different Environments بيئات مختلفة



village

قرية



the Nile

النيل



city

مدينة



river

نهر



building

مبنى



oasis

واحة



mountain

جبل



forest

غابة



desert

صحراء

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

reptiles

زواحف

crocodile

تمساح

branch

فرع

different

مختلف

quiz

اختبار قصير

human

إنسان - بشر

population

عدد سكان

planet

كوكب

capital

عاصمة

home

موطن / وطن / منزل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

5

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs الأفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
travel يسافر	travelled	know يعرف	knew
guess يحمن	guessed	do يفعل	did
live يعيش	lived	have / has يملك	had

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the longest	الأطول	the shortest	الأقصر
travel to	يسافر إلى	the center of the earth	مركز الأرض
home for	موطن لـ	live in	يعيش في
Which of ... ?	أي من ... ؟	kinds of	أنواع من

Study the following

1 - The Nile is **the longest** river in the world.

نهر النيل هو أطول نهر في العالم.

2 - The Nile is **6,670 kilometers long**. That's like travelling to the centre of the earth.

يسع طول نهر النيل ٦,٦٧٠ كيلو متراً. وهذا يعادل السفر إلى مركز الأرض.

3 - The Nile has **two branches** in Egypt.

نهر النيل له فرعين في مصر.

4 - The Nile is **home for** different kinds of fish, birds and turtles!

نهر النيل هو موطن لأنواع مختلفة من الأسماك والطيور والسلاحف!

5 - One of the **largest reptiles**, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

يعيش فيه أحد أكبر الزواحف وهو تمساح النيل.

Did you know ?

Did you know that the World **Capital** of Cats in Romania has a cat population that is four times larger than the **human population**?

هل تعلم أن العاصمة العالمية للقطط في رومانيا بها عدد سكان أكبر بأربعة أضعاف من عدد سكان البشر؟

Listen and read.

A: Let's do this quiz.

B: What's it about?

A: The Nile.

B: That sounds very interesting.

A: Of course. The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. No River Nile, no Egypt. Come on, let's try.

Question 1, which sentence is true? Is the Nile the shortest, the longest or the widest river in the world?

بالضيق يطلب النيل الحياة لجميع كلاً لا مصر بدون نهر النيل. هذا ما يحير السؤال رقم 1. ما هي الحقيقة الصحيحة؟ هل النيل هو أقصر، أطول أو أوسع نهر في العالم؟

B: Hmm, I don't know. I guess it's the longest, what do you think?

همم، لا أعلم أظن أنه الأطول، ما رأيك؟

A: Yeah, I know both the Amazon and the Nile are very, very long. Let's choose "b". Next question: "The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long, is it like traveling to the center of the earth, traveling to the moon or traveling to Australia?"

بعد أعلم أن كلا من نهر الأمازون والنيل طويل جدًا جدًا. دعنا نختار "ب". السؤال التالي: يبلغ طول النيل 6,670 كيلومترًا. هل يشبه السفر إلى مركز الأرض، أم السفر إلى القمر، أم السفر إلى أستراليا؟

B: Maybe traveling to the center of the earth?

ربما مثل السفر إلى مركز الأرض؟

A: Hmm, I'm not sure, that sounds like a good guess. Number 3, we need to look at the pictures and decide which river is the Nile.

همم، لست متأكدًا جدًا يبدو وكأنه تخمين جيد رقم 3 نحن بحاجة إلىلقاء نظرة على الصور ونقرر أي نهر هو النيل.

B: I think it's 'c'.

أعتقد أنها 'c'.

A: Why?

لماذا؟

B: In 'c' you can see the Cairo Tower, so it's clearly in Egypt!

في "c" يمكنك أن ترى برج القاهرة، لذا فمن الواضح أنه في مصر!

A: Ok, last one. How many branches does the Nile have in Egypt?

هذا السؤال الأخير. كم فرع لنهر النيل في مصر؟

B: I'm going to say three, that sounds like a good number.

Erm, check on your phone.

سأقول ثلاثة هذا يبدو عدداً جيداً. تحقق من هاتفك.

A: Ok, Aha! There are 2 branches!

هذا! أها! يوجد فرعين!

General Activities

1

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

branches - fish - elephant - earth - crocodile

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is about 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the 1) The Nile has two 2) in Egypt. It is home for different kinds of 3), birds and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile 4), lives in it.

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The Nile is the river in the world.
a) tallest b) shortest c) longest d) widest
- We can't travel to the of the earth.
a) north b) west c) center d) east
- The Nile has two in Egypt.
a) buildings b) canals c) villages d) branches
- The Nile is home different kinds of fish.
a) with b) on c) for d) at
- Camels live in the
a) river b) sea c) desert d) lake
- Crocodiles are the planet's largest
a) insects b) fish c) birds d) reptiles
- Village, city and desert are different
a) villages b) rivers c) oases d) environments

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches. There are many people living near the Nile. The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. That's like travelling to the center of the earth. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, The Nile crocodile, lives in it.

1) Choose the correct word.

- 1) The Nile has branches.
a) one b) two c) three d) four
- 2) There are many people living near the
a) Nile b) lake c) tower d) center

2) Answer the following questions.

- 1) Summarize the text in one sentence.
- 2) What is the longest river in the world?

4 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

the Nile is the longest river

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The Nile

Guiding words:

(longest - 6,670 kilometers - two branches - home for)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

9

Lesson (2) A short story about Grandpa

Listen and repeat.

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

excited	متحمس (مسرور)	quiet
visitors	زوار	truck
wonder	يتساءل / يتعجب	curious
memory	ذاكرة / ذكرى	grandpa

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

street	شارع	space
box	صندوق	grass
metal	معدن	right
Colossi of Memnon	تمثالا ممنون	left

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

pull	يسحب	pulled
bury	يدفن	buried
walk	يمشي	walked
study	يذاكر	studied
cross	يعبر	crossed
wonder	يتساءل	wondered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

find	يجد	found
dig	يحفر	dug
say	يقول	said
grow up	ينمو / يكبر	grew up
get up	يستيقظ	got up
feel	يشعر	felt

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

inside the box	داخل الصندوق	sit down
cross the road	يعبر الطريق	on his face
many years ago	منذ عدة سنوات	pull out
from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم	look for

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Grandpa and his box of memories

"Look, this was my street." Grandpa was very excited. We were in the village where he grew up. It is near the Colossi of Memnon.

«انظر، كان هذا شاري.» كان جدي متحمسًا للغاية. كنا في القرية التي نشأ فيها. إنها بالقرب من تمثالَي ممنون.

"It was very quiet when I lived here," said Grandpa. "Now, there are lots of visitors from all around the world." "That's where my friend lived. We played football on this street. There were no cars then."



قال جدي: «كان المكان هادئًا جدًا عندما كنت أعيش هنا. الآن هناك الكثير من الزوار من جميع أنحاء العالم.»
«هذا هو المكان الذي عاش فيه صديقي. لعبنا كرة القدم في هذا الشارع. لم تكن هناك سيارات حينها.»

Grandpa looked right and left, and he crossed the road. The road had lots of trucks and cars. "And this," he said "is where I lived." We looked at the space. There was no house. There was only grass and one big tree. "Hmm, I wonder. It was so many years ago...." Grandpa looked at the tree. Grandpa walked to the tree. He looked at the ground. Then he started digging. He pulled out an old, metal box. He had a big smile on his face. "Look!" he said. He was very excited. "We were eight years old when we buried this. Let's sit down and look inside the box." "Yes, please," I said. "I'm very curious!"

نظر الجد يمينًا ويسارًا وعبر الطريق. كان على الطريق الكثير من الشاحنات والسيارات. قال: "وهذا هو المكان الذي عشت فيه". نظرنا إلى المكان الفارغ. لم يكن هناك منزل. كان هناك فقط عشب وشجرة واحدة كبيرة. نظر الجد إلى الشجرة وقال "هممم، أعجب: كان ذلك منذ سنوات عديدة...". نظر الجد إلى الشجرة، ثم مشى الجد إلى الشجرة. ونظر إلى الأرض. ثم بدأ في الحفر. وأخرج صندوقًا معدنيًا قديمًا. كانت على وجهه ابتسامة كبيرة. قال: "انظروا" وكان متحمسًا جدًا. "كنا في الثامنة من لعمر عندما دفنا هذا. هيا بنا نجلس وننظر داخل الصندوق." قلت: "نعم من فضلك، أنا شغوف جدًا!"

Help your child read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 11

Language

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

م. الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

-We played football on this street.

-He pulled out an old, metal box.

Form التكوين

زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

(d, ed, ied) إلى الفعل المنتظم.

like → liked

pull → pulled

carry → carried

Spelling Notes:

كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يضاف (d) فقط.

like → liked

live → lived

كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ثم نضيف (ied).

bury → buried

study → studied

كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف متحرك يتم إضافة (ed) للفعل.

play → played

stay → stayed

انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرف متحرك، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

stop → stopped

travel → travelled

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي

am / is → was

are → were

swim → swam

see → saw

Lesson (2)

Negative (النفى)

Subject (فاعل) + **didn't** + Inf. (مصدر الفعل)

I **didn't** play football on this street.

Questions

Yes / No question (السؤال بنعم/لا)

Did + subject (فاعل) + Inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

Did you **do** your homework?

Yes, I **did**. - No, I **didn't**.

Wh- question (السؤال بكلمة استفهام)

Q.W + **did** + subject (فاعل) + Inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

When did you **get** up?

I **got** up at seven o'clock.

Keywords (الكلمات الدالة)

yesterday	أمس	ago	منذ
last (week / ...)	(الأسبوع / ...) الماضي	in the past	في الماضي

I **studied** English yesterday.

Verb to (be) in the past

was

were

(I / He / She / It / A singular noun) + **was**

It **was** very quiet when I lived here.

(We / You / They / A plural noun) + **were**

They **were** at the museum yesterday.

Help your child use the past simple tense.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 13

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.



Negative

He / She / It / A singular noun + **was not (wasn't)**

Grandpa's village **wasn't** very noisy.

We / You / They / A plural noun + **were not (weren't)**

There **weren't** any cars on the street.

Question

(Yes / No) question

Was + (he / she / it / a singular noun) ... ?

Was Grandpa very excited?

Yes, he **was**. - No, he **wasn't**.

Were + (we / you / they / a plural noun) ... ?

Were they in the village?

Yes, they **were**. - No, they **weren't**.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Grandpa very excited yesterday.
a) is b) were c) was d) be
- Last Friday, we in the village.
a) is b) were c) was d) are
- I here two years ago.
a) lives b) was lived c) live d) lived
- There no cars in the park.
a) was b) were c) is d) are
- We football on this street.
a) playing b) plays c) played d) were playing
- When did he
a) got b) getting c) gets d) get
- you do your homework yesterday?
a) Do b) Did c) Were d) Does
- He the box of memories eight years ago.
a) burying b) bury c) buries d) buried

ask and answer.

اسأل وأجب.



When did you **get up** today?

متى استيقظت اليوم؟



I **got up** at six o'clock.

استيقظت الساعة السادسة بالضبط.



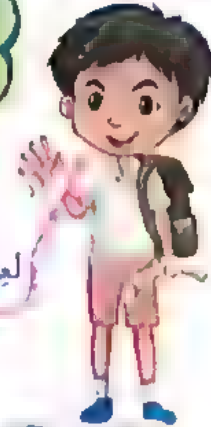
What did you **do** on your way home?

ماذا فعلت وأنت في طريقك للمنزل؟



I **played** football.

لعبت كرة القدم.



What subjects did you **study** today?

ما المواد الدراسية التي درستها اليوم؟



I **studied** English and Math.

درست اللغة الإنجليزية ورياضيات.

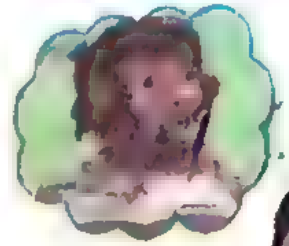




Did you **do** your homework?

Was it easy?

هل أديت واجبك؟ وهل كان سهلاً؟



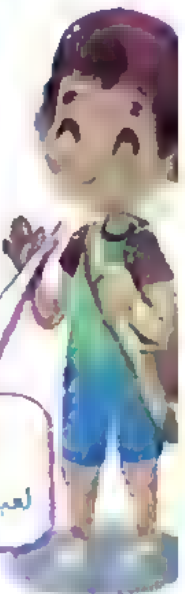
Yes, I did my homework.
It was very easy.

نعم، أديت واجبي، وكان سهلاً جداً.



What games did you play today?

ما الألعاب التي لعبتها اليوم؟



I played video games.

لعبت ألعاب الفيديو.



Read and complete this paragraph.

اقرأ واكمل الفقرة.

Yesterday, I up at seven o'clock. I studied English and Math. I football on my way home. I my homework. It very easy. I video games.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

was - buried - were - played - quiet

Grandpa's village was very 1) Now, there are a lot of people. There 2) no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. Grandpa 3) eight years old when he 4) the box of memories. Now, Grandpa is very old.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Grandpa's village very quiet in the past.
a) is b) was c) were d) be
- He the box of memories.
a) are burying b) bury c) buried d) burying
- What did you on your way home?
a) does b) done c) doing d) do
- In the past, I long hair.
a) has b) have c) having d) had
- Grandpa to the tree yesterday.
a) walk b) walking c) walked d) walks
- I'm very to know everything about the story.
a) slow b) sad c) curious d) quiet
- I why he came late.
a) make b) redo c) do d) wonder
- He looked at the ground and started
a) cooking b) digging c) writing d) reading
- Grandpa out an old, metal box.
a) made b) pulled c) called d) wrote
- He had a lot of at home yesterday.
a) bikes b) visitors c) trucks d) cars

3

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
 اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Ali (were) young when he buried the b
2. When (do) you get up yesterday
3. The village was very quiet in the (preser
4. We (play) football on the street in the pa
5. There (was) no cars in the pa
6. (Do) you do your homework yesterday
7. What did you (does) on your way hom
8. I (live) in Cairo ten years ag
9. How (do) Grandpa feel when he saw his old street
10. I (study) English yesterday

4

Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

what games did you play today

5

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إثنى عشرية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your day

Guiding words:

(got up - did homework - played - watched)

Lesson (3) Part 1: A short story

Vocabulary المفردات

mouse / mice	فأر - فئران	loud	عالي الصوت	excited	متحمس
city	مدينة	pretty	جميلة	scared	خائف / مرعوب
the country	الريف	hole	جحر	smoke	دخان
pleased = delighted	مسرور	voice	صوت (الإنسان)	noise	ضوضاء
exciting	مثير	smells	روائح	sounds	أصوات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
wait ينتظر	waited
prepare يُعد / يُجهز	prepared
rain تمطر	rained
cover يغطي	covered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
give يعطي	gave
know يعرف	knew
come يأتي	came
run يجري	ran

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the ground	في الأرض	around the corner	حول (الناصية / الزاوية)
bright lights	أضواء ساطعة	It's time to ...	حان الوقت لـ ...
Why don't you ...?	لِمَ لا...؟ / لماذا لا...؟	better than	أفضل من
catch the train	يلحق القطار	go back	يعود / يرجع
good for	جيدة لـ / مناسبة لـ	full of	ملينة بـ
There's no reason to wait.	ليس هناك سبب للانتظار.		

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

City Mouse and Country Mouse

فأر المدينة وفأر الريف

Beginning:

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground.

The country mouse was **pleased**. He gave his friend grass and seeds.

The city mouse said, "Thank you. **You know**, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see?"

The country mouse was **delighted** and very **excited**.

The city mouse stopped eating and said, "There's no reason to wait. We can **catch** a train at eight."

The two friends ran to the train, just as it started to rain.

فأر المدينة فأر الريف في حفرة في الأرض. كان فأر الريف مسرورا. وقدم لصديقه العشب والبذور. فأر المدينة: "شكرا لك. كما تعلم المدينة جميلة ومليئة بالأضواء الساطعة، فلماذا لا تأتي وتري؟" كان فأر الريف هجاء ومتحمسا للغاية. توقف فأر المدينة عن الأكل وقال: "لا يوجد سبب للانتظار. يمكننا اللحاق بقطار الساعة ستة". ركض الصديقان إلى القطار عندما بدأت تمطر.

Middle:

In the city, the smoke from the cars covered the **stars** and the noise was **incredibly** loud. The country mouse was **scared**.

He wasn't **prepared for** so many new sounds and smells.

Suddenly, a cat's voice said, "Hmm, two **mice** and some bread."

"Run, run, run" said the city mouse. They ran around the corner

لمدينة، غطى دخان السيارات النجوم وكانت الضوضاء عالية (صاخبة) بشكل لا يصدق. كان فأر الريف خائفا. لم يستعدا للعديد من الأصوات والروائح الجديدة. وفجأة قال قط: "همم، فأران وبعض الخبز". فأر المدينة: "اركض، اركض، اركض". ركضا حول الزاوية.

End:

The country mouse said, "Thank you my friend, the city is exciting but it's time for me to go back to the country and back to where it is good for me."

فأر الريف: "شكرا لك يا صديقي، المدينة مثيرة، ولكن حان الوقت للعودة إلى الريف والعودة إلى حيث تكون حياة جيدة بالنسبة لي".

There are three stages of the story

يوجد ثلاث مراحل للقصة

Beginning بداية

The city mouse visited the country mouse.

Middle منتصف

The two mice caught the train.

End نهاية

The country mouse went back to where life is good for him.

The moral of the story: Different people like different things.

مغزى القصة: الأشخاص مختلفين وبالتالي يفضلون أشياء مختلفة.

Language

Irregular Plural Nouns

صيغ الجمع الغير منتظم

There are many irregular plural nouns that are learnt as they are.

هناك بعض الأسماء الجمع الغير منتظمة والتي تُحفظ كما هي.



a mouse

mice



a foot

feet



a child

children



a tooth

teeth



Help your child learn some irregular plural nouns.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم بعض أسماء الجمع الغير منتظم.

Part 2: Pronunciation

Long Vowel Sounds

/eɪ/		/i:/		/aɪ/		/oʊ/	
gave	عطي	see	يُرى	my	مالي	no	
wall	جدار	seed	بذرة	mice	فئران	go	
train	قطار	tree	شجرة	bright	رائع	smoke	
rain	مطر	pleased	سعيد	light	خفيف	hole	
eight	ثمان	eat	أكل	delighted	فرحان	toe	أصبع
eat	أكل	reason	سبب	excited	متحمس	know	
plot	قطعة	he	هو	life	حياة	grow	
kite	طائرة	she	هي			low	منخفض



Read the following sentences.

1. Wait, there's a train at eight!
2. I see two mice eating some seeds.
3. Why don't you visit my hole?
4. We can see three trees.
5. My kite is high in the sky.
6. Oh no, I hurt my toe.



Part 3: CLIL: Math

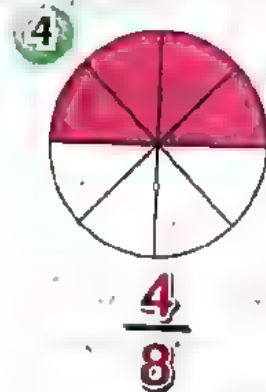
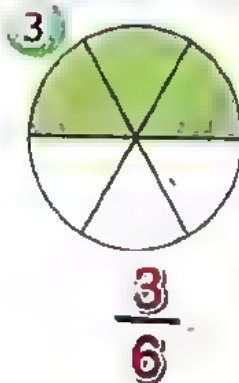
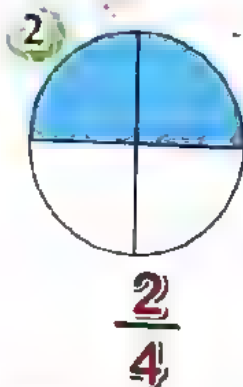
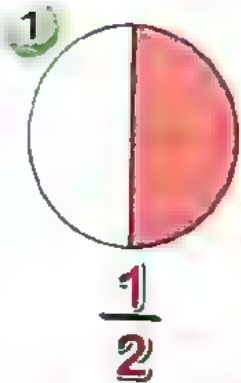
Fraction (الكسر الاعتيادي)

A fraction is a part of a whole. الكسر هو جزء من كل

It has a numerator and denominator. وله بسط ومقام



$\frac{1}{2}$	→ numerator	}	< smaller than	(أصغر من)
	→ denominator		> bigger than	(أكبر من)
			= the same as	(يساوي)



Equal Fractions: (الكسور المتساوية)

$$\frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{3}{6} = \frac{4}{8}$$

لاحظ:

$\frac{1}{2}$ is bigger than $\frac{2}{6}$	$\frac{1}{2}$ is smaller than $\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$ is the same as $\frac{4}{8}$
$>$	$<$	$=$

Simplifying Fractions: (تبسيط الكسور)

We can make a fraction simpler by dividing a numerator and denominator by the same number.

يمكننا تبسيط الكسر بقسمة البسط والمقام على نفس الرقم.

$$\frac{10}{40} \Rightarrow \frac{10 \div 10}{40 \div 10} = \frac{1}{4} \quad \text{So} \quad \frac{10}{40} = \frac{1}{4}$$

Help your child practice simplifying fractions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتدرب على تبسيط الكسور الاعتيادية.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

23

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- In the **town**, the smoke from the cars covered the stars.
a) town b) city c) cave d) lake
- The noise was incredibly **loud**.
a) low b) slow c) loud d) light
- The city is exciting but it's too **sad**.
a) happy b) sad c) good d) scary
- The country life is **quieter**.
a) quieter b) longer c) shorter d) faster

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Mice live in **holes**.
a) houses b) apartments c) trees d) holes
- The city is full of **bright** lights.
a) bright b) dark c) blue d) pale
- We can **catch** a train.
a) sleep b) play c) catch d) go
- The **smoke** from cars covered the stars.
a) smoke b) fog c) water d) light
- I can see two **mice**.
a) a rat b) mice c) a mouse d) mouse
- Life in the country is **better** than life in the city.
a) taller b) longer c) better d) bigger
- Life in the city is **exciting**.
a) exciting b) excited c) delighted d) pleased

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

happy - voice - train - corner - mice

There were two mice. The two 1) went to the city.
They went by 2) They heard a cat's 3) They
ran around the 4) They were very scared.

Lesson (3)

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة. Read the text and answer the questions.

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds. The city mouse said, "Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see?" The country mouse was delighted and very excited. The city mouse stopped eating and said, "There's no reason to wait. We can catch a train at eight."

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) The country mouse gave his friend some
a) beans b) seeds c) potatoes d) rice
- 2) The city is full of bright
a) buses b) cars c) lights d) colors

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) How can they go to the city?.....
- 4) How was the country mouse?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد لترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.


1) mouse - pleased - The country - was - .

2) covered - The smoke - the stars - the cars - from - .

3) don't - Why - see - you - come - and - ?

6 Look and write the fraction.

انظر واكتب الكسر.

1.  = _____

2.  = _____

3.  = _____

4.  = _____

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

7 Read and tick (✓) or (×).

علامة (✓) أو (×).

1. $\frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{6}$ ()

2. $\frac{1}{8} > \frac{5}{10}$ ()

3. $\frac{1}{4} < \frac{2}{8}$ ()

4. $\frac{2}{3} = \frac{3}{8}$ ()

8 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

hole

/ei/

smoke

light

/i:/

my

see

/ai/

train

/ou/

9 Color the shape according to the fraction.

لون الشكل حسب الكسر.

1. $\frac{1}{2}$

2. $\frac{2}{4}$

3. $\frac{1}{3}$

4. $\frac{3}{6}$

10 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Guiding words:

City life

(pretty - exciting - smoke - noisy)

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing & Project

Vocabulary المفردات

first day	اليوم الأول	town	مدينة
neighbor	جار	nervous	متوتر - عصبي
neighborhood	الحي السكني	electricity	كهرباء
backpack	حقيبة الظهر	shoe store	محل أحذية
pants	بنطال	gate	بوابة
gas cars	سيارات تعمل بالغاز	kind	عطوف
shopping mall	مركز تسوق	modern	حديث

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
cry	يبكي cried	put on	يلبس - يرتدي put on
remember	يتذكر remembered	go	يذهب went
stay	يقيم / يبقى stayed	speak	يتحدث spoke
carry	يحمل carried	drive	يقود / يسوق drove

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It was fun!	كان الأمر ممتعاً!	do a project	يقوم بمشروع
start school	'ببدا الدراسة	as much as possible	بقدر الإمكان
stay at home	يبقى في البيت	find out	يكتشف
play with	يلعب بـ	much cleaner	أكثر نظافة
on Saturdays	في أيام السبت	shopping area	منطقة تسوق

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

27

Listen, read, and answer.

استمع وقرا وأجب.

My first day of school**by Younis**

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very **nervous**. I liked staying at home with my family.

I wanted to play with my toys. I didn't want to go to school.

I **put on** a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my **backpack**. Mom and I walked to school.

At the school **gate**, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy **called** Marwan.

The teacher was very **kind**.

We studied math and played games; it was fun! The next day, I wasn't nervous.

I was **excited**. I wanted to see my new friend, Marwan. I wanted to learn math and I wanted to go to school.



أتذكر يومي الأول في المدرسة، كنت في السادسة من عمري، وكنت أعيش في أسوان. كنت متوتراً للغاية، وكنت أحب البقاء في المنزل مع عائلتي. أردت أن ألعب باللعاب، لم أرغب في الذهاب إلى المدرسة. أردت أن أبقى في شيرت أزرق، وسروالاً (بنطلون) رمادياً، وحذاء أسود. حملت حقيبتي مشيت مع والدي إلى المدرسة. عند بوابة المدرسة أردت أن أبكي. قلت وداعاً ودخلت الفصل. طلبت مني المعلمة أن أجلس بجانب (مروان). كانت المعلمة لطيفة جداً. درسنا الرياضيات ولعبنا الألعاب. كان الأمر ممتعاً. في اليوم التالي، لم أكن متوتراً. كنت متحمساً. أردت أن أرى صديقي الجديد مروان. كنت أرغب في تعلم الرياضيات وأردت الذهاب إلى المدرسة.

1) How old was Younis?

2) Where did Younis live?



How to plan your Writing

- 1- Write notes about the topic.
- 2- Write the topic sentence.
- 3- Write the details in the form of paragraph.
- 4- Write the conclusion.
- 5- Review the spelling and punctuation marks.

Note

When we write notes, we use key words. We do not write sentences.
We can use our notes to plan writing.

عندما ندون الملاحظات، فإننا نستخدم الكلمات الأساسية ولا نكتب جملًا. كما يمكننا استخدام الملاحظات للتخطيط للكتابة.

Example Write about your first day of school.

Notes:

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> First day | <input type="checkbox"/> six years | <input type="checkbox"/> T-shirt - pants |
| <input type="checkbox"/> nervous | <input type="checkbox"/> teacher - kind | |

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I put on a green T-shirt and black pants. I was very nervous. The teacher was very kind. I liked my school. It was fun!

Project

Look and read.

نظر واقرأ.

What is different now in Seleem's town?

My town then and now

We are doing a history **project** in school about our town. We looked at old **photos**. We spoke to our older **neighbors** to find out as much as possible.

نقوم بعمل بحث تاريخي في المدرسة عن مدينتنا. نظرنا إلى الصور القديمة. تحدثنا إلى جيراننا الأكبر سنًا لتعرف أكبر قدر ممكن من المعلومات.



Grandma says that her mom and dad drove cars like this. All the cars were **gas cars**. They were very **noisy**.

تقول الجدة إن أمها وأبها كانا يقودان سيارات كهذه. كانت جميع السيارات تعمل بالوقود. كانت صاخبة جدًا.



Now we have a car that uses **electricity** and gas; it's much cleaner and **quieter**.

الآن لدينا سيارة تسير بالكهرباء والغاز. إنها أكثر نظافة وأكثر هدوءًا.



Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a **shoe store** on Saturdays.

كانت مدينتنا بها منطقة تسوق، لكنها كانت قديمة جدًا. كان أبي يعمل في متجر أحذية أيام السبت.



Today we have a big modern **shopping mall**, but I don't like shopping! I want to play football.

اليوم لدينا مركز تسوق حديث وكبير، ولكن أنا لا أحب التسوق! أريد أن ألعب كرة القدم.

General Activities

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اسمعه وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. says that his mom and dad drove gas cars.
a) **Father** b) **Mother** c) **Grandpa** d) **Grandma**
2. Gas cars were very
a) **noisy** b) **quiet** c) **clean** d) **good**
3. Our town had a cleaner area but it was very
a) **new** b) **modern** c) **old** d) **far**
4. My dad worked in a store on Saturdays.
a) **clothes** b) **shoe** c) **book** d) **plastic**

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I my first day of school.
a) **remember** b) **play** c) **watch** d) **can**
2. I like staying home.
a) **at** b) **for** c) **on** d) **to**
3. I put a blue T-shirt.
a) **in** b) **to** c) **at** d) **on**
4. cars use electricity and gas.
a) **Old** b) **Modern** c) **Big** d) **Bad**
5. The school is very big.
a) **pen** b) **art** c) **ruler** d) **gate**
6. I carried my to school.
a) **car** b) **backpack** c) **door** d) **desk**

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وامل.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1) I liked staying at home | a) my backpack to school. |
| 2) I carried | b) old photos. |
| 3) We studied math and | c) played games. |
| 4) We looked at | d) with my family. |
| | e) I put on a blue T-shirt. |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (31)

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys. I didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school. The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) The writer was very at the first day of school.
a) happy b) excited c) nervous d) sad
- 2) He put on a T-shirt.
a) yellow b) red c) black d) blue

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) How did the writer go to school?
- 4) What did the writer study?

5

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your first day of school

Guiding questions:

- How old were you? - How did you feel?
- What did you wear? - Did you like your first day?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit (7)

Vocabulary

the Nile	النيل	river	نهر	delighted	مسرور - مبتهج
building	مبنى	village	قرية	excited	متحمس
city	مدينة	curious	شغوف	mouse/mice	فأر - فئران
desert	صحراء	visitors	زائرين	moral	الدرس المستفاد
forest	غابة	quiet	هادئ	catch a train	يلحق القطار
mountain	جبل	metal box	صندوق معدني	the country	الريف
oasis	واحة	pleased	مسرور	fraction	كسر

Language

The Past Simple Tense

Usage

* يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

e.g. - We **played** football on this street.

Form - The second form of the verb.

* التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Negative Subject (فاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. - We **didn't play** football on this street.

(Yes / No) question Did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

e.g. - **Did you go** to the market? - **Yes, I did.** - **No, I didn't.**

Wh- question Q.W + did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

e.g. - **When did you get up?** - I got up at seven o'clock.

Keywords

yesterday أمس منذ

last (week / ...) الماضي (الأسبوع / ...) in the past في الماضي

e.g. - I studied English yesterday.

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن :

"The Nile"

The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It is about 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the earth. It has two branches in Egypt. It is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles. The Nile crocodile lives in it.

"My memories"

I used to live in a small village. There were many green trees and grass. The streets were very quiet. I played with my friends on these streets. There weren't many cars or trucks in the street. It was pretty.

"My first day of school"

My name is Sara. I remember my first day of school. I put on my pink T-shirt and black pants. My dad drove me to school. I was nervous. The teacher was kind and I liked her. I wanted to go to school every day.

"My neighborhood then and now"

I live in a small town. I live with my grandpa and grandma. My neighborhood is different now. The buildings were small and old. Now they are tall and modern. Grandpa drove an old car. Now we have a car that uses electricity. We had an old shopping area. Now we have a big modern shopping mall.

Dictation on Unit (7)

Unit 7

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
مدينة	مدينة	مبنى	مبنى
غابة	غابة	صحراء	صحراء
واحة	واحة	جبل	جبل
قرية	قرية	نهر	نهر

Unit 7

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
شارع	شارع	شاحنة	شاحنة
يسحب	يسحب	يحفر	يحفر
فضولي	فضولي	يلفن	يلفن
زوار	زوار	متحمس	متحمس
يتساءل	يتساءل	هاديء	هاديء

Unit 7

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
مسروور	مسروور	حفرة - حجر	حفرة - حجر
مدينة	مدينة	أضواء	أضواء
فار	فار	فقران	فقران
عالي الصوت	عالي الصوت	جميلة	جميلة
دخان	دخان	ضوضاء	ضوضاء
صوت (الإنسان)	صوت (الإنسان)	خالف	خالف

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
متوتر	متوتر	منطقة تسوق	منطقة تسوق
بوابة	بوابة	حقبة ظهر	حقبة ظهر
سيارات تعمل بالغاز	سيارات تعمل بالغاز	الحمد السليم	الحمد السليم
جار	جار	محل أجنبية	محل أجنبية

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 35

Activities on Unit (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from **a, b, c, or d**.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The Nile brings life to the whole of
a) France b) Egypt c) China d) England
- The Nile is about kilometers long
a) 6.670 b) 6.550 c) 6.500 d) 6.400
- It's like travelling to the center of the
a) Mars b) Earth c) Venus d) Mercury
- The Nile has two in Egypt
a) floors b) canals c) lakes d) branches

2 Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d**.
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I put a blue T-shirt
a) in b) on c) at d) next
- The Nile is one of the largest reptiles
a) crocodile b) snake c) fish d) bird
- The Nile has two in Egypt
a) animals b) visitors c) birds d) branches
- The Nile is the river in the world
a) heaviest b) longest c) shortest d) biggest

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

crops - weather - balls - trees - neighbors

I'm Ali and I live with my family. We live near the river and there are lots of 1) all around us. The 2) is nice and our 3) are very friendly. We grow a lot of 4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last week, I visited my friend in Cairo. I traveled by train. The weather was very hot. There were many cars and the noise was loud. I stayed in his house for two days. Cairo is exciting and pretty. I thanked my friend. I went back to my village in the evening.

Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Last week, I visited my friend in ...
a) **Cairo** b) **Luxor** c) **Aswan** d) **Tanta**
- 2) The underlined word "pretty" means ...
a) **ugly** b) **beautiful** c) **bad** d) **dirty**

Answer the following questions.

- 3) How did you travel to Cairo?
- 4) When did you go back to your village?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Yesterday, we (play) football in the park.
2. Grandpa's village (is) quiet in the past.
3. We (find) a metal box in the ground last year.
4. Last Friday, I (visit) my grandparents.

Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

how long is the Nile

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Grandpa's village

(lived - quiet - no cars - trees)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The Nile is the river in the world.
a) **shortest** b) **widest** c) **tallest** d) **longest**
- The Nile has branches in Egypt.
a) **ninety** b) **two** c) **four** d) **ten**
- The Nile lives in the Nile.
a) **chameleon** b) **lizard** c) **crocodile** d) **rats**

2 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I was years old when I went to school.
a) **eight** b) **seven** c) **six** d) **nine**
- I lived in
a) **Aswan** b) **Cairo** c) **Giza** d) **London**
- I put on a T-shirt and gray pants.
a) **blue** b) **white** c) **green** d) **yellow**

2 Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

long - branches - about - two

- Sara : Let's do this quiz.
 Mariam : What's it 1) ?
 Sara : The Nile. It's very interesting.
 Mariam : How long is it?
 Sara : It's about 6,670 kilometers 2)
 Mariam : How many 3) does it have in Egypt?
 Sara : It has 4) branches in Egypt.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

studied - do - got - subjects

- Ali : Hi, Ahmed. When did you get up today?
 Ahmed : I 1) up at six o'clock.
 Ali : What 2) did you study today?
 Ahmed : I 3) English, Math and Arabic.
 Ali : Did you 4) your homework?
 Ahmed : Yes, I did.

Unit 8

We had fun

مضينا وقتنا ممتعا



In this unit students will

- find out how to use quantifiers.
- practice using past simple irregular verbs.
- discuss and write about festivals.
- read about Egyptian festivals and celebrations.
- talk about special family days.
- write about a special day.

Lesson (1) Food and drinks

Listen and repeat.

سمع وردد.



a packet of cookies
عبوة بسكويت (كوكيز)



a bottle of water
زجاجة ماء



a carton of juice
علبة عصير

Quantifiers

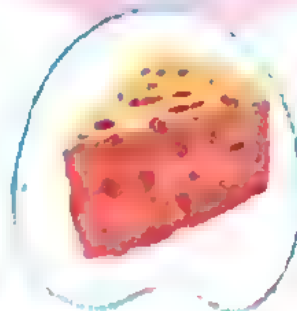
محددات الكمية



a slice of cake
شريحة كيك



a bar of chocolate
قالب شوكولاتة



a piece of cheese
قطعة جبن

Lesson (1)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

banana	موزة favorite	محبب - مفضل
lemon	ليمونة pizza	بيتزا
meat	لحم semolina	سميد / لباب الخبز
carrot	جزرة dessert	الحلو (بعد الطعام)

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
happen يحدث	happened	drink يشرب	drank
listen يستمع	listened	think يعتقد	thought
work يعمل	worked	eat يأكل	ate
name يسمي	named	find يجد	found

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

You look a bit green.	نبدو مريضاً	That's horrible!	هذا قبيح!
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	a kilo of	كيلو من
a bottle of cola	رجاجة كولا	a bar of soap	قطعة صابون (صابونة)

Did you know ?

In Morocco, Algeria and Tunisia, there is a famous dish called Couscous. It is semolina with meat and / or vegetables. It can also be eaten with sugar or as a dessert. Do you want to try Couscous?

في المغرب والجزائر وتونس يوجد طبق مشهور يسمى الكسكسي. مكون من السميد باللحم أو الخضروات. يمكن أيضا تناوله مع السكر كحلوى. هل ترغب في تجربة الكسكسي؟



Help your child identify these words.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (41)

ساعد طفلك أن يعترف من هذه الكلمات

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Mom : Did you have fun at the party, Reem?

هل استمتعتي في الحفلة يا ريم؟

Reem : Yes, thank you.

نعم، أشكرك.

Mom : What's the matter? You look a bit green.

ما الأمر؟ تبدين مريضة.

Reem : Hmm, I don't feel well.

همم، لا أشعر أنني بخير.

Mom : Oh, dear. Did you eat too much?

أوه يا عزيزتي. هل أكلت كثيراً؟

Reem : I only had a slice of cake.

تناولت قطعة كيك فقط.

Mom : Anything else?

هل تناولتي أي شيء آخر؟

Reem : No... I drank some juice.

لا... تناولت بعض العصير.

Mom : Some juice?

بعض العصير؟

Reem : Well, a carton of juice.

حسناً، علبة عصير.

Mom : Is that all?

هل هذا كل شيء؟

Reem : Maybe a bar of chocolate, only a small one ... and a piece of cheese.

ربما قالب شيكولاتة، قطعة صغيرة فقط ... و قطعة جبنة.

Mom : Cheese and chocolate? That's horrible!

جبنة و شيكولاتة، هذا فظيع!

Reem : That's why I ate some cookies.

ولهذا السبب أكلت بعض الكعك المخل.

Mom : How many cookies did you eat?

كم كعكه أكلتها؟

Reem : A ... packet ... of cookies.

باكوت... من الكعك المخل.

Mom : Oh, no!

أوه، لا!

Reem : I was thirsty after all that food, so I had a bottle of water.

كنت عطشانة بعد كل هذا الطعام، لذلك شربت زجاجة مياه.

Language

Quantifiers

We use the "quantifiers" to indicate the quantity of something.

نستخدم «محددات الكمية» للإشارة إلى كمية شيء ما.

a carton of

juice



milk



a piece of

cheese



bread



cake



a slice of

pizza



meat



water



a bottle of

cola



milk



a packet of

cookies



a bar of

chocolate



General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bar - green - slice - juice - packet

Reem went to the party yesterday. She looks a bit 1)
She had a 2) of cake. She drank a carton of
3) She had a 4) of chocolate
and a piece of cheese.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. He wants a of soap.
a) bar b) packet c) carton d) bottle
2. She wants a slice of
a) juice b) water c) cake d) milk
3. She drank a of water.
a) packet b) carton c) slice d) bottle
4. I ate a of cheese.
a) bottle b) packet c) carton d) piece
5. I need a bar of
a) chocolate b) cookies c) water d) juice
6. Mazen ate a of cookies.
a) slice b) bottle c) carton d) packet
7. Mona ate a slice of
a) cookies b) juice c) meat d) water
8. I want a bottle of
a) meat b) pizza c) chocolate d) cola
9. I drank a carton of
a) juice b) chocolate c) meat d) cake
10. I bought a carton milk.
a) in b) of c) at d) off

Lesson (1)

اقرأ واصل.

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1) a carton of | a) water |
| 2) a bar of | b) chocolate |
| 3) a bottle of | c) cheese |
| 4) a piece of | d) juice |
| | e) tomatoes |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I ate a (slice) of cookies.
2. Mona drinks a (bar) of water.
3. My mother bought a (bottle) of soap.
4. Reem drank a (piece) of juice.
5. My sister ate a (packet) of chocolate.
6. Ali drank a (carton) of cola.

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Food and drinks in the party

Guiding words:

(party - a carton of - a slice of - a bar of - fun)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (45)

Lesson (2) A poem

Vocabulary المفردات

poem	قصيدة	deep	عميق	the day	النهار - اليوم
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	movie	فيلم	dessert	حلوى - حلوى
beach	شاطئ	trip	رحلة قصيرة	candy	حلوى
jellyfish	فنينج البحر	Damietta	محافظة دمياط	frozen	متجمد
meal	وجبة	lovely	جميلة / رائعة	octopus	خطبوط

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	taste يتذوق	tasted
check يراجع / يحرص	checked	rain تمطر	rained
use يستخدم	used	remember يذكر	remembered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see يرى	saw	feel يشعر	felt
make يصنع	made	catch يمسك / يصطاد	caught
swim يسبح	swam	freeze يتجمد	froze
sing يغني	sang	go يذهب	went

Lesson (2)

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

live by	يعيش بجوار	feel happy	يشعر بالسعادة
lovely dish	أكلة رائعة	instead of	بدلاً من
sing a song	يغني أغنية	taste horrible	له مذاق فظيع
feel sick	يشعر بالمرض	frozen yogurt	زبادي منلج

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Our trip to the Sea

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see
Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea.
We swam in the water, which was deep and blue.
We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!
Grandpa caught a fish,
Which Grandma made into a lovely dish!
We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert,
Bananas, apples and frozen yogurt.
We saw some old photos and sang a song.
But time was short. The day wasn't long.
We felt happy. It was a day to remember.
We will go again soon, early September!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

AL-BAHEP

47

Language

The Past Simple Tense with Irregular verbs

زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة

الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي لأنه لا يوجد قاعدة توضح كيفية تحويلها إلى الماضي

Present	Past	Present	Past
throw	رمى / ترمى threw	buy	بشترى bought
write	كتب wrote	hear	سمع heard
forget	نسى forgot	fly	بطير flew
say	يقول said	come	يأتي came
run	يجري ran	cut	يقطع cut
give	يعطي gave	feel	يشعر felt

e.g. - I **felt** happy yesterday.

Negative

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. - I **didn't feel** happy yesterday.

Question

Yes / No question

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - Did you **sing** a song? - Yes, I **did**. - No, I **didn't**.

Wh- question

Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - How **did** you **feel**? - I **felt** happy.

Lesson (2)

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Last weekend we to Damietta.
a) go b) goes c) went d) going
2. The boys in the sea yesterday.
a) swim b) swam c) swims d) swum
3. We lots of fish in the sea last weekend.
a) see b) has seen c) sees d) saw
4. Grandpa a fish yesterday.
a) catch b) catches c) caught d) catching
5. We ate a meal and a healthy dessert.
a) having b) has c) have d) had
6. Last weekend we happy.
a) feeling b) feel c) feels d) felt
7. They pizza last week.
a) eat b) eats c) ate d) eating
8. The day too long.
a) were b) was c) are d) being
9. I my swimming test yesterday.
a) have b) has c) having d) had
10. I to the beach last year.
a) go b) goes c) went d) going
11. We all a song last night.
a) singing b) sing c) sang d) sings
12. I him a cake last week.
a) give b) gave c) gives d) giving
13. Omar a car two years ago.
a) bought b) buys c) buy d) buying
14. Ali to school yesterday.
a) run b) ran c) running d) runs
15. What did you ?
a) say b) saying c) says d) said

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (49)

General Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة من a, b, c, أو d.

1. Last weekend we went to
a) Aswan b) Luxor c) Damietta d) Cairo
2. Grandpa and grandma live by the
a) sea b) river c) mountain d) farm
3. We in water
a) played b) swam c) ran d) sang
4. caught a fish
a) Dad b) Mom c) Grandma d) Grandpa



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة من a, b, c أو d.

1. The water was and blue
a) delighted b) happy c) sad d) deep
2. Grandpa a fish yesterday
a) drank b) played c) caught d) read
3. We saw some old photos and a song
a) gave b) sang c) made d) did
4. Last weekend we to Damietta
a) go b) goes c) went d) going
5. We had ice-cream for
a) desert b) oessert c) dish d) date
6. I too much candy yesterday
a) eat b) eating c) ate d) eats
7. What did you last weekend
a) doing b) does c) did d) do
8. I a cake, but I used salt instead of sugar. It tasted horrid.
a) eat b) eats c) ate d) eating
9. Last night I very tired
a) is b) was c) are d) were
10. Where did you yesterday
a) go b) goes c) went d) going

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق

fish - swam - visited - sea - deep

We went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the ¹⁾ . We ²⁾ in the water, which was ³⁾ and blue. We saw lots of ⁴⁾ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish! We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert, bananas, apples and frozen yogurt. We saw some old photos and sang a song. But time was short. The day wasn't long. We felt happy. It was a day to remember. We will go again soon, early September!

Choose the correct word.

- 1) Last weekend we went to
a) Alexandria b) Damietta c) Luxor d) Cairo
- 2) The sea was very
a) high b) cloudy c) deep d) easy

Answer the following questions.

When did you go to Damietta?

What did you see?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We (swim) in the sea yesterday.
2. Grandpa (catch) a fish last Friday.
3. They (have) ice-cream for dessert last night.
4. We (see) lots of fish last holiday.
5. (Next) weekend, we went to Aswan.
6. What did you (eat)?
7. Where (do) you go last Monday?
8. I (watch) a great movie last night.
9. We (eat) too much candy. We felt sick.
10. I was happy when I (hear) the good news.

6

Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

omar and mazen swam in the sea.

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A trip to the sea

Guiding words:

(weekend - Damietta - sea - fish - dish - fun)

52

Unit (8) We had fun

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) CLIL: Social Studies

Vocabulary المفردات

Ramadan	شهر رمضان	celebrate (d)	يحتفل
Shawwal	شهر شوال	celebration	احتفال
Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر	festival	مهرجان / عيد
Eid Mubarak	عيد مبارك	sunset	غروب الشمس
kahk	كحك / كعك	region	منطقة
fast (v)	يصوم	nuts	مكسرات
mosque	مسجد	bakery	مخبز
honey	عسل	delicious	لذيذ

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Coptic Easter	عيد القيامة القبطي	information	معلومات	photos	صور
also	أيضا	month	شهر	until	لغاية / حتى
Islamic	إسلامي	special	خاص / مميز	during	أثناء
moon	قمر	park	حديقة عامة	people	ناس

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

want to	يريد أن	do better	بؤدي بشكل أفضل
is called	يُسمى - يُسمى	eat delicious food	يأكل طعاماً لذيذاً
during the day	أثناء النهار	make kahk	يصنع كحك
think about	يفكر في	buy from	يشترى من
spend time with	يفضي وقتاً مع	teach about	يُعلم عن

Help your child identify these words.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

53

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Look and read.

Eid Al-Fitr in Egypt عيد الفطر في مصر

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim **festival**. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims **fast** during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until **sunset**.



In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It is also a time to help other people.

عيد الفطر هو عيد إسلامي الشهر الذي يسبق العيد يسمى رمضان. في رمضان يصوم الكثير من المسلمين أثناء النهار. لا يأكلون أو يشربون حتى غروب الشمس في شهر رمضان، يفكر الناس في العام الماضي. يفكرون في الأشياء التي فعلوها بشكل جيد والأشياء التي يريدون القيام بها بشكل أفضل. إنه أيضًا وقت لمساعدة الآخرين.

When is Eid Al-Fitr? ما موعد عيد الفطر؟

That's a very good question! It's different every year. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called **Shawwal**. The month starts when people see the new **moon**.

هذا سؤال جيد جدًا إنه مختلف كل عام. يصادف اليوم الأول من الشهر الهجري العاشر، ويسمى شوال. يبدأ الشهر عندما يرى الناس هلال الشهر الجديد.

Lots of Kahk! الكثير من الكحك

Kahk are **delicious** cookies. People eat kahk to **celebrate**. They have **nuts**, sugar, and honey in them. Many families make kahk but you can buy them from a **bakery**, too.



الكحك هو كعك محلي لذيذ. يأكل الناس الكحك للاحتفال. يحتوي الكحك على مكسرات وسكر وعسل بداخله. تصنع العديد من العائلات الكحك ولكن يمكنك شراؤه من المخبز أيضًا.

"Eid Mubarak" « عيد مبارك »

Eid is a time of **celebration** and for being happy. People say 'Eid Mubarak' to their friends. People go to the **mosque** and spend time with their families. They eat delicious food and celebrate!



العيد هو وقت الاحتفال والسعادة، يقول الناس «عيد مبارك» لأصدقائهم. يذهب الناس إلى المسجد ويقضون الوقت مع عائلاتهم. يأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا ويحتفلون!

Lesson (3)

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Sham El-Nessim

Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival.

Sham El-Nessim is celebrated every year on Easter Monday, which is the day after Easter.

All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim.

During the festival, people eat fesikh (dried fish), lettuce, green onions, termes (beans), and boiled eggs.

People like to paint boiled eggs, have picnics and spend time outside.



شم النسيم هو أقدم احتفال في مصر. يتم الاحتفال بشم النسيم كل عام في يوم الاثنين في عيد الفصح، وهو اليوم التالي لعيد الفصح. يحتفل كل المصريين بشم النسيم، يأكل الناس الفسيخ (السماك المجفف) والخس والبصل الأخضر والبرسيم (يقول) والبيض المسلوق. يحب الناس تلوين البيض المسلوق والزهرات وقضاء الوقت في الخارج.



**Think about another festival in your region or country.
Complete the table, then write.**

Name of the festival

When is it?

What do people do?

What do people eat?

What do people wear?

Why do you like it?

Help your child write about a festival in his/ her country. **AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term** (55)

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن احتفال في بلده



General Activities

1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim
a) festival b) school day c) holiday d) sports day
2. The before Eid is called Ramadan
a) day b) year c) week d) month
3. Many Muslims during the day of Ramadan
a) play b) fast c) eat d) drink
4. In Ramadan, people think about the year
a) next b) present c) second d) past

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Eid Al-Fitr is a festival
a) Muslim b) Coptic c) Christian d) Jewish
2. In Ramadan, Muslims during the day
a) eat b) drink c) sleep d) fast
3. Muslims don't eat or drink until in Ramadan
a) sunshine b) midnight c) sunset d) sunlight
4. Eid happens in the day of the 10th Islamic month
a) first b) second c) third d) fourth
5. Kahk are delicious
a) toast b) cookies c) bread d) cake
6. Shawwal starts when people see the new
a) moon b) sun c) earth d) sky
7. We can buy kahk from a
a) grocer's b) florist's c) bakery d) butcher's
8. Eid is a time of and for being happy.
a) participation b) celebration c) evaporation d) information

Lesson (3)

9. In Eid Al-Fitr, we eat delicious food and
a) study b) watch c) celebrate d) work
10. Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest
a) food b) club c) festival d) playground

3

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bakery - celebrate - eat - nuts - families

Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to 1)
They have 2), sugar, and honey in them. Many 3)
make kahk but you can buy them from a 4), too.

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, Shawwal. People eat kahk to celebrate. They spend time with their families.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

- 1) The text is about
a) Eid Al-Fitr b) Mother's Day c) Sham El-Nessim d) Coptic Easter
- 2) The underlined word "before" is opposite to
a) next b) after c) on d) in

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What is the month before Eid?
- 4) When do Muslims fast in Ramadan?

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

5

Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1) are - delicious - Kahk - cookies - .2) from - buy - We - kahk - a bakery - .3) Egyptians - Sham - All - celebrate - El-Nessim - .

6

Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

we celebrate Eid Al-Fitr after ramadan

7

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Eid Al-Fitr

Guiding words:

(festival - Ramadan - kahk - spend - happy)

58

Unit (8) We had fun

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing & Project

Vocabulary المفردات

great-grandma	الجددة الكبرى	special	خاص / مميز
picnic	نزهة / وجبة في الهواء الطلق	together	معا / سويا
birthday	يوم ميلاد	fun	متعة / مرح

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

huge	ضخم	stars	نجوم
garden	حديقة (المنزل)	Christmas tree	شجرة الكريسماس
countries	بلاد / دول	colored balls	كرات ملونة
aunt	عمة / خالة	games	ألعاب
uncle	عم / خال	lights	أضواء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
decorate	يُزين decorated	represent	يُمثل / يرمز إلى represented
play	يلعب played	throw	يرمي / يلقي threw

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

come together	يجتمعون	chocolate cake	تورتة الشوكولاتة
play with	يلعب مع	Happy Birthday!	عيد ميلاد سعيدا
have fun	يقضي وقتا ممتعا	the whole family	العائلة بأكملها
had a party	الأم حفلا	special day	يوم مميز

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

59

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Great-grandma's birthday

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old! All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came.

منذ عامين، كان لدينا حفل مميز للغاية. كانت جدي الكبرى تبلغ من العمر ٩٠ عامًا. اجتمع كل أفراد عائلتي للاحتفال. جاء جميع أبناء عمي وعماتي وأعمامي.

We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

قمنا بعمل وجبة ضخمة في حديقة عمتي. كان هناك الكثير من الطعام: سلطة ولحم وسمك وخبز وكمك وبسكويت وفواكه. أكلت شريحة كبيرة من تورتة الشوكولاتة وشربت زجاجة عصير برتقال. وأكلت أيضًا بعض السلطة والفاكهة.

I played games with my cousins all afternoon. We ran. We threw a ball. We sang "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.

لعبت ألعابًا مع أبناء عمي طوال فترة الظهيرة. ركضنا وقذفنا الكرة وأنشدنا «عيد ميلاد سعيد» لجدتنا الكبرى.

It was a very special day because our great-grandma was very happy. She liked seeing the whole family. We all had fun.

لقد كان يومًا مميزًا جدًا لأن جدتنا الكبرى كانت سعيدة جدًا وأحببت رؤية أفراد الأسرة بأكملها. لقد استمتعنا جميعًا.





Read again and answer the questions.

1) What was the special day?

2) Who was at the party?

3) What did the writer eat?

4) What did the writer do?

5) Why was it a special day?

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

What do people put on Christmas trees?

ماذا يضع الناس على أشجار الكريسماس؟

In many countries, people decorate Christmas trees at Christmas.

These trees are always green. The trees represent new life. People decorate the trees with lights, colored balls, and stars.



في كثير من الدول، يزين الناس أشجار عيد الميلاد في عيد الميلاد (الكريسماس). هذه الأشجار خالقة خضراء. تمثل الأشجار حياة جديدة. يزين الناس الأشجار بالأضواء والكرات الملونة والنجوم.

Help your child read and write about festivals.

AI-BAHER - G

62

General Activities

1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's
a) house b) park c) school d) garden
2. There was lots of
a) toys b) food c) books d) cars
3. I ate a big slice of
a) cheese b) meat c) chocolate cake d) bread
4. I drank a of orange juice.
a) bottle b) slice c) bar d) piece

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Yesterday we a special party.
a) has b) had c) having d) have
2. My-grandma was 90 years old.
a) great b) young c) thin d) small
3. We had a picnic in my aunt's garden.
a) little b) sad c) huge d) tiny
4. We "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.
a) sang b) ate c) drank d) threw
5. She liked seeing the family.
a) wall b) call c) whole d) hole
6. We all fun.
a) did b) had c) made d) played
7. I drank a of orange juice.
a) bottle b) slice c) pocket d) piece
8. I ate a big of chocolate cake.
a) bottle b) slice c) carton d) pocket
9. People Christmas trees at Christmas.
a) sleep b) eat c) drink d) decorate
10. The trees new life.
a) represent b) want c) read d) sell

62

Unit (8) We had fun

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



3

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

celebrate - Happy Birthday - party - played - delicious

My grandpa's birthday was yesterday. We had a nice

- 1) at my grandparents' house. All the family came to
- 2) his birthday. The food was 3) We sang
- "4) "to him. My grandpa was very happy.

4

Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Two days ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old! All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. My great-grandma was very happy to see the whole family. We sang "Happy Birthday" to her. We had fun.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) My great-grandma was years old.
a) 70 b) 80 c) 90 d) 100
- 2) All my came to the party.
a) teachers b) friends c) doctors d) aunts

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What did you do in your aunt's garden?

4) Why did the whole family come together?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Two years ago we (have) a special party.
2. I (eat) a big slice of chocolate cake yesterday.
3. I (play) games with my cousins last week.
4. It (is) a nice party because my great-grandma was happy.
5. My great-grandma (like) seeing the whole family last year.

6

Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1. great-grandma's birthday was special

2. i ate some fruit

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A special day

Guiding elements:

- What was the special day?
- Who was there?
- What did you eat?
- What did you drink?
- What did you do?
- Why was it a special day?

64

Unit (8) We had fun

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review on Unit (8)

Quantifiers محددات الكمية

a carton of juice	علبة من العصير	a bar of soap	قطعة صابون
a packet of cookies	عبوة بسكويت	a bottle of water	زجاجة ماء
a slice of meat	قطعة لحم	a slice of cake	قطعة كيك
a piece of cheese	قطعة من الجبن	a carton of milk	عبوة حليب
a bar of chocolate	قالب شوكولاتة	a piece of bread	قطعة خبز

Others

Shawwal	شوال	fast	بصوم	poem	قصيدة
kahk	كحك	grandma	حدة	Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر
mosque	مسجد	friendly	ودود	surprised	متدهش
celebration	احتفال	picnic	نزهة / وجبة	decorate	يزين

Social Studies



Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.



Kahk are delicious cookies.



All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim.



During Sham El-Nessim, people eat fesikh and colored eggs.

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب مقبرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

"A day when you had fun"

I went to Damietta to visit my Grandma and Grandpa.
I went there with my family. I played and swam in the sea.
I ate delicious fish. I played games with my cousins. We had fun.

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. They don't eat or drink until sunset. We celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. We have kahk and play. We are very happy.

"Sham El-Nessim"

Sham El-Nessim is a national holiday in Egypt. It's celebrated in spring. We go to the parks with our families and spend the day outside. We usually have fesikh, salted fish, and colored eggs. We play and have fun with our families and friends.

"Grandma's birthday"

Last week, we had a very special party. My grandma was 60 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food. I played games with my cousins all afternoon. We ran and threw a ball. We had fun.

Dictation on Unit (8)

Unit (8)

Word	Meaning
	قالب شوكولاتة
	زجاجة ماء
	قطعة جبن

Word	Meaning
	عبوة كوكيز
	علبة عصير
	شريحة كيك

Unit (8)

Word	Meaning
	يسبح
	يرى
	ياكل
	يعني
	يصطاد
	يشعر

Word	Meaning
	سبح
	رأى
	آكل
	عنى
	اصطاد
	شعر

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning
	رمضان
	يحتفل
	احتفال
	مخبز

Word	Meaning
	عيد الفطر
	يصوم
	كحك
	مسجد

Lesson (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning
	زخه
	خاص / مميز
	يزين

Word	Meaning
	الجلدة الكبرى
	مح
	شجرة الكريسماس

Help your child dictate the words.

ساعد طفلك على إملاء الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

(67)

Activities on Unit (8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وخط دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- Eid is a time of _____ and for being happy.
a) celebration b) watering c) studying d) planting
- People say "Eid Mubarak" to their
a) killers b) enemies c) fans d) friends
- People go to the _____ and spend time with their families.
a) temple b) mosque c) church d) cave
- They eat _____ food and celebrate.
a) bad b) hard c) delicious d) unhealthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Eid is a time of _____ and for being happy
a) celebration b) fast c) work d) irrigation
- I drank a _____ of water
a) slice b) bottle c) bar d) piece
- We had ice cream for
a) desert b) dish c) dessert d) rice
- People _____ Christmas trees with lights and colored balls
a) played b) decorated c) put d) watered

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق

represent - lights - dark - green - decorate

People like to celebrate around the world. In many countries, people 1) _____ Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always 2) _____. The trees 3) _____ new life. People decorate the trees with 4) _____, colored balls, and stars.

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Sham El-Nessim is a national holiday in Egypt. It is Egypt's oldest festival. Sham El-Nessim is celebrated every year on Easter Monday, which is the day after Easter. All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim people go to the parks with their families and spend the day outside. People usually have fesikh, salted fish, and colored eggs. They all have fun.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) Sham El-Nessim is a national holiday in
a) London b) America c) Egypt d) France
- 2) In Sham El-Nessim, people spend the day
a) inside b) outside c) home d) school

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Who celebrates Sham El-Nessim?
- 4) What do people do during the festival?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I (buy) a packet of cookies yesterday.
2. Last Monday, Ali (go) to the park.
3. Heba (reads) a comic book last night.
4. My brother (wake) up late yesterday.

6

Punctuate the following sentence. صح علاقات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

Amr and mona were at the party

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة الثمانية عشر (18) كلمة عن

Sham El-Nessim

Guiding words:

(celebrate - spring - Coptic - colored eggs - fesikh)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. **استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.**

1. Last week we went to
a) Giza b) Cairo c) Damietta d) Alexandria
2. Grandparents live by the
a) sea b) club c) school d) river
3. We saw lots of
a) dishes b) fish c) ships d) chicks

2 Listen and choose the correct answer. **استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.**

1. Two ago, we had a very special part
a) days b) weeks c) years d) months
2. My great-grandma was years old
a) 90 b) 9 c) 19 d) 96
3. All my came together to celebrate
a) friends b) family c) fathers d) mothers

2 Read and complete the dialogue with: **اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:**

matter - eat - slice - thank

- Hazem : Did you have fun at the party?
Ali : Yes, ¹⁾ you.
Hazem : What's the ²⁾? You look a bit green.
Ali : I don't feel well.
Hazem : Did you ³⁾ too much?
Ali : I had a ⁴⁾ of cake and a carton of juice.

Read and complete the dialogue with: **اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:**

swam - Damietta - Where - sea

- Reem : Where did you go last weekend?
Toka : I went to ¹⁾ to see my grandparents.
Reem : ²⁾ did they live?
Toka : They lived by the ³⁾
Reem : What did you do there?
Toka : We ⁴⁾ in the water which was deep and blue.

Unit 9

What makes us special

ما يجعلنا مميزين



In this unit students will...

- read about party games.
- listen about some unusual festivals around the world.
- practice more irregular past simple verb forms.
- explore how to present information.
- write an invitation.
- work in groups to organize a class celebration.

Lesson (1) Games around the world

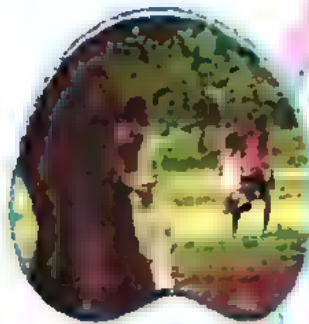
Listen and repeat.

ستمع وردد.



pass the parcel

لعبة تمرير الطرد



hide and seek

لعبة الاستغماية / التميضة



musical chairs

لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية



rope pulling (tug-of-war)

لعبة شد الحبل



unwrap

يفتح



wrap

يُغلف / يلف

Lesson (1)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

ready	مستعد	birthday	عيد ميلاد	present	هدية
traditional	تقليدي	popular	محبوب / شعبي	exciting	مثير
wide	واسع / عريض	winner	فائز	seeker	الباحث

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
Present	Past	Present	Past
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	give يعطي	gave
wrap يلف / يُغلف	wrapped	hold يمسك	held
cover in يغطي بـ	covered in	take off ينزع / يخلع	took off
join ينضم إلى	joined	keep يحتفظ بـ	kept
close يغلّق	closed	sit يجلس	sat
count يعد	counted	hide يختبئ	hid

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get together with يجتمع مع	without بدون
open presents يفتح الهدايا	put out يضع
sit in a circle يجلسون في دائرة	the last الأخير
play music يشغل موسيقى	respect rules يحترم القواعد
a piece of paper قطعة من الورق	help others يساعد الآخرين
listen to others يستمع إلى الآخرين	take away يزيل / يبعد

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

73

Look and read.

اقرأ واقرأ.

Party Games

When we get together with our family and friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play games. Here are some traditional games people play around the world.

عندما نجتمع مع عائلاتنا وأصدقائنا للاحتفال بشيء، ما مثل عيد ميلاد أو زفاف، عادة ما يحب الأطفال ألعاباً مختلفة بعض الألعاب التقليدية التي يلعبها الناس حول العالم.

Pass the parcel لعبة تمرير الطرد

We all love to give presents. It's even more fun to open presents

How to play:

Wrap a small present and cover it in lots and lots... and lots of paper. The players sit in a circle.

Play some music.

Players give the present to the next person as the music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present takes off one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.

كلنا نحب أن نقدم الهدايا. وفتح الهدايا أكثر متعة

طريقة اللعب:

لف هدية صغيرة وقم بتغطيتها بالكثير والكثير... والكثير من الورق. يجلس اللاعبون في دائرة وهم يمشون بعض الموسيقى. اللاعبون الهدية للشخص التالي أثناء تشغيل الموسيقى. عندما تتوقف الموسيقى، يزيل اللاعب الذي يحمل الهدية قطعة من الورق. اللاعب الذي يفتح الهدية يحتفظ بها.

Musical chairs لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية

Run but be ready to sit!

How to play:

Put out some chairs. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs.

Play some music.

Players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without the chair is "out". Take away one chair and play again.

اجري لكن كن مستعداً للجلوس!

طريقة اللعب:

ضع بعض الكراسي. إذا كان لديك 6 لاعبين فأنت تحتاج فقط إلى 5 كراسي. قم بتشغيل بعض الموسيقى يقوم اللاعبون بالجري حول الكراسي. عندما تتوقف الموسيقى يجلس الجميع للعب. اللاعب الذي يكون بلا كرسي يكون «خارج اللعبة». أمتنع

أداة الجري

Lesson (1)

Hide and seek لعبة الاستغماية / الغمضة

This is a very old and **popular** game. Many players can join in this exciting game. All you need is a wide place to play it.

How to play:

One player, called the **seeker**, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.



هذه لعبة قديمة جدًا ومحبوبة. يمكن للعديد من اللاعبين المشاركة في هذه اللعبة المثيرة. كل ما تحتاجه هو مكان واسع لكي تلعب. صريده سبب لأعب واحد يسمى (البحث) بضمض عينيه وبعد حتى عشرين. يختبئ اللاعبون الآخرون بدون البحث الثغور عينهم. يصبح اللاعب الأول الذي يجده الباحث هو الباحث التالي. اللاعب الأخير المتبقي هو الفائز.

Tug-of-war (rope pulling) لعبة شد الحبل

It's a sport with two teams against each other in a test of strength. Children always play it in the park. Each team is trying to pull the rope towards them. The team who pulls strongly is the winner.



هي رياضة ذات فريقين ضد بعضهم البعض في اختبار للقوة. يلعبها الأطفال دائمًا في الحديقة. يحاول كل فريق سحب الحبل نحوهم. الفريق الذي يسحب بقوة هو الفائز.

What do you learn when you play together?

ماذا نتعلمون عندما نلعب مع بعض؟

We learn to:

have fun

help others

respect rules

listen to others

نتعلم أن

نستمتع

نساعد الآخرين

نحترم القواعد

نستمع إلى الآخرين

Ask and answer.

سأل وأجاب.

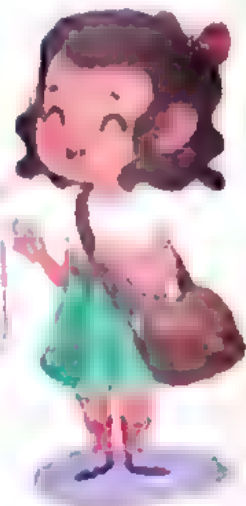
Which game only needs people?

أي لعبة تحتاج فقط إلى أشخاص؟



Hide and seek.

الاستغناء / التخبئة



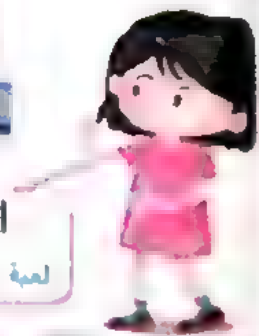
Which games do you need music to play?

أي ألعاب تحتاج إلى موسيقى للعبها؟



Pass the parcel and musical

لعبة تمرير الطرد و الكراسي الموسيقية



In which game do you need to run?

في أي لعبة تحتاج أن تجري؟



Musical chairs.

الكراسي الموسيقية



General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Musical is a game in which you run but be ready to sit!
a) tables b) chairs c) desks d) sofas
2. Players run the chairs.
a) under b) behind c) next d) around
3. When the stops, everyone sits down
a) music b) movie c) play d) water
4. The player without the chair is
a) inside b) on c) out d) by

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We get with our friends to play.
a) in b) on c) together d) off
2. Children often games.
a) play b) take c) eat d) sleep
3. We all love to presents.
a) drink b) go c) lose d) give
4. Players run the chairs.
a) on b) around c) under d) in
5. Hide and is a popular game.
a) sick b) sack c) seek d) took
6. We must respect when we play.
a) roles b) ropes c) rides d) rules

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1) We cover our eyes | a) I have fun. |
| 2) We have fun | b) open presents. |
| 3) It's fun to | c) in hide and seek. |
| 4) The player without | d) the chair is "out". |
| | e) with our friends. |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hide and seek: This is a very old and popular game. Many players can join in this exciting game. All you need is a wide place to play it.

How to play:

One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Hide and seek is a very game.
a) bad b) strong c) popular d) high
- 2) The last one left is the
a) singer b) winner c) loser d) player

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What do you need to play hide and seek?
- 4) What does the seeker do?

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

omar and Anas like to play hide and seek

6 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Guiding words:

Party games

(games - children - presents)

Lesson (2) Festivals around the world

Festivals مهرجانات

Cheese rolling	مهرجان دحرجة الجبن	La Tomatina	مهرجان التراشق بالطماطم
Kite festival	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية	Chinese New Year	رأس السنة الصينية

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

string	خيط	dragon	تنين	messy	فوضوي
old clothes	ملابس قديمة	monster	وحش	hill	تل
mud	طين	alive	حي / على قيد الحياة	strange	غريب
envelope	مظروف	weird	غريب	traditions	عادات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
laugh يضحك	laughed	wear يرتدي	wore
wish يتمنى	wished	fall يقع	fell

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look up ينظر لأعلى	good luck حظ جيد / حظ سعيد
Happy New Year! عام جديد سعيدا	covered in مغطى بـ
take a shower يأخذ دش	rhyme with يتناغم صوتيا مع
feel alive يشعر أنه على قيد الحياة	take part in يشارك في
UK = the United Kingdom المملكة المتحدة	for fun للمتعة
During my travels خلال رحلاتي	smiling faces وجوه مبتسمة
all over the world في كل أنحاء العالم	The rest of بقية

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

79

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

My name is Dina and it's my job to tell you about my travels and to bring the rest of the world into your home. The world is a big, beautiful place. The more we learn about other countries, the better we can understand each other and live together.

This week I'm looking back at some of the weird and wonderful traditions I saw during my travels.

اسمي دينا ووظيفتي أن أخبركم عن رحلاتي وأن أجلب بقية العالم إلى منزلكم. العالم مكان كبير وجميل. كلما عرفنا المزيد عن البلدان الأخرى، كلما كان بإمكاننا فهم بعضها البعض والعيش معاً بشكل أفضل. هذا الأسبوع، سألقي نظرة على بعض التقاليد الغريبة والرائعة التي رأيته خلال رحلاتي.

Let's start with this one in the UK, it was one of the strangest things I ever saw. Look, they pushed the round cheese down the hill and hundreds of people ran after it. Why did they do it? The person who won the race, won the cheese. It was funny (and very strange), but it looked a bit dangerous. Lots of people fell but no body was hurt.



لنبدأ بهذا التقليد في المملكة المتحدة، لقد كان من أغرب الأشياء التي رأيتهما على الإطلاق. انظروا لقد دفعوا الجبن المستدير أسفل التل وركض مئات الأشخاص وراءه. لماذا فعلوا ذلك؟ الشخص الذي فاز بالسباق، فاز بالجبن. كان الأمر مضحكاً (وغريباً جداً)، لكنه بدا خطيراً بعض الشيء. سقط الكثير من الناس ولكن لم يصب أحد بأذى.

The next one was in China and many parts of Asia.

People at weddings and celebrations gave the children and young people red envelopes.

I asked my friend about this and she told me that there was money inside the envelope and it was their way of saying good luck. The amount of money usually had an even number at the end (like 2, 4, 6, 8 etc.) because they said this was good luck.



كان التالي في الصين وأجزاء كثيرة من آسيا. قدم الناس في الأفراح (حفلات الزفاف) ولاحفلات للأطفال والشباب هدايا حمراء. سألت صديقتي عن هذا وأخبرتني أن هناك نقوداً داخل الظرف وأن هذه طريقتهم في قول حظاً سعيداً. عادة ما يكون مبلغ المال رقم زوجي في النهاية (مثل ٢، ٤، ٦، ٨ إلخ) لأنهم قالوا أن هذا يدل على الحظ السعيد.

Lesson (2)

I had lots of fun here, it was called La Tomatina and it was in Spain. It was very messy!
Every body threw old tomatoes at each other.
I couldn't see anything. After of a few minutes everyone was covered in red tomatoes! Why do they throw old tomatoes? For fun!



لقد استمتعت كثيرًا هنا، وكان يسمى مهرجان الترشق بالطماطم وكان في أسبانيا. لقد كان فوضويًا جدًا! ألقى الجميع الطماطم القديمة على بعضهم البعض. لم أستطع رؤية أي شيء. وبعد دقائق قليلة كان الجميع مغطى بالطماطم الحمراء! لماذا يرمون الطماطم القديمة؟ للمتعة!

This is the fourth one. It was a beautiful kite festival. These happen all over the world, but this one was in India. Hundreds of people, young and old, flew their kites. The sky was full of animals, fish, monsters... I tried to fly one of the kites, it was very difficult!



كان هذا هو الرابع. كان مهرجان طائرات ورقية جميل. يحدث في جميع أنحاء العالم، لكن كان هذا المهرجان في الهند. مئات من الناس، صغارًا وكبارًا طيروا طائراتهم الورقية. كانت السماء مليئة بحيوانات، وأسماك ووحوش. حاولت أن أطير إحدى الطائرات الورقية، كان الأمر صعبًا للغاية!

Well, that's just a few examples of the festivals I saw during my travels. I saw people who wore colorful clothes, who ate delicious food, who did some silly things. Most importantly in all these festivals I saw lots of happy smiling faces.

حسنًا، هذه مجرد أمثلة قليلة من المهرجانات التي رأيته خلال رحلاتي. رأيت أشخاصًا يرتدون ملابس ملونة، ويأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا، ويفعلون بعض الأشياء السخيفة. الأهم من ذلك، في كل هذه المهرجانات رأيت الكثير من الوجوه المبتسمة السعيدة.

Language

Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Verb	d	celebrate	→	celebrated
	ed	push	→	pushed
	ied	try	→	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	run	يجري	ran
tell	يخبر	told	fall	يقع	fell
have / has	يمتلك	had	win	يفوز	won
wear	يرتدي	wore	fly	يطير	flew
give	يعطي	gave	say	يقول	said
throw	يلقي	threw	eat	يأكل	ate
read	يقرأ	read	hit	يضرب	hit
run	يجري	ran	go	يذهب	went
make	يصنع	made	be	يكون	was / were
take	يأخذ	took	do	يفعل	did

e.g. We visited Luxor last year.

She saw her friends yesterday.

Lesson (2)

Rhyme القافية

A rhyme:

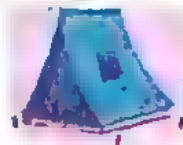
means one or two words that sound alike, but the meaning is different.

القافية: هي كلمة أو كلمتين لهم نفس النطق الصوتي ولكن يختلفون في المعنى.

Some verbs in the past rhyme with other words.

بعض الأفعال في الماضي تتناغم في الصوت مع كلمات أخرى.

"went" rhymes with tent



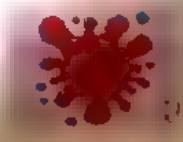
"put" rhymes with foot



"ate" rhymes with eight



"read" rhymes with red



"was" rhymes with because

"hit" rhymes with it

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The cheese is celebrated every year.
a) rolling b) pulling c) reading d) calling
2. He gave me a red envelope me good luck.
a) playing b) wishing c) wearing d) reading
3. At everything is red.
a) La Tomatina b) Kite festival c) Cheese rolling d) Eid Al-Fitr
4. I fell and I was covered mud.
a) at b) of c) with d) in
5. We must old clothes at La Tomatina.
a) play b) go c) wear d) take
6. Is it easy to a kite?
a) ride b) drive c) fly d) run
7. People tomatoes at La Tomatina festival.
a) drink b) eat c) throw d) run
8. Grandma me some money yesterday.
a) give b) giving c) gave d) gives
9. Paint on the floor and mum was angry.
a) fall b) falling c) fell d) fallen
10. Mom me to take a shower yesterday.
a) tells b) told c) tell d) telling
11. Last week I the race.
a) win b) won c) winning d) wins
12. I my friend when I was at school.
a) see b) seeing c) saw d) sees
13. The word rhymes with "foot".
a) put b) tent c) went d) ate
14. The kite high into the sky.
a) flew b) pulled c) told d) threw
15. They down the hill and fell last year.
a) running b) runs c) run d) ran

Lesson (2)

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We (go) to the park yesterday.
2. Ali (see) his friend Hani last Friday.
3. I (wear) my jacket last night.
4. How did you (felt)?
5. I (look) up and saw birds.
6. I looked around, everything (is) red.
7. My mother gave me a present and (wish) me good luck.
8. I closed my eyes and (run).
9. Ahmed (win) the race two weeks ago.
10. Heba (eat) fish for lunch yesterday.

3 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.
dina enjoyed La Tomatina

4 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:
اكتب فقرة (ثمانية عشر) من (18) كلمة عن:

Guiding words: **Kite festival**
(beautiful - world - fly - sky - fun)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 85

Lesson (3) Citizenship

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.



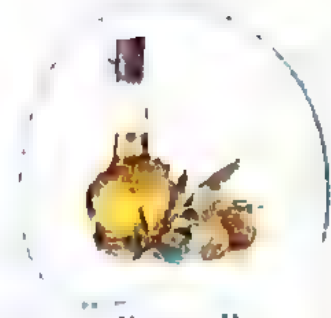
garlic

نوم



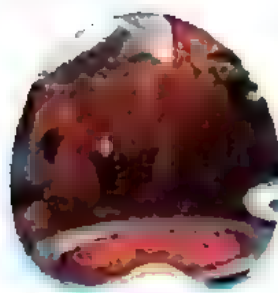
Ful Medames (beans)

فول مدمن



olive oil

زيت الزيتون



syrup

شراب (شربات)



basbousa

بسبوسة



semolina

شميد

Vocabulary المفردات

citizenship	المواطنة	karate	رياضة الكاراتيه	sports	رياضات
age	عمر / سن	Sinai region	منطقة سيناء	ideas	أفكار
culture	ثقافة	wonderful	رائع	energy	طاقة
national	قوي / وطني	Egyptians	المصريون	helpful	متعاون
half	نصف	history	تاريخ	movie	فيلم
festival	مهرجان	sweet	جلو المذاق	land	أرض
nature	طبيعة	east	شرق	prize	جائزة
south	جنوب	rich	غني	mountain	جبل

Lesson (3)

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
continue يستمر	continued	win يفوز	won
describe يصف	described	mean يقصد	meant
participate يشارك	participated	think يفكر / يعتقد	thought
cook يطبخ	cooked	make يصنع	made
serve يقدم	served	know يعرف	knew

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

famous for مشهور بـ	How about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟
proud of فخور بـ	full of مملوء بـ	
friendly to ودود مع	helpful to متعاون مع	
served with يقدم مع / بـ	under the age of تحت سن	

Definitions

تعريفات

special مميز	having something different or that nobody else has
proud فخور	to feel proud of something
region منطقة	part of a country
authors مؤلفون	people who write movies and stories
hospitable مضياف / كريم	to be friendly and welcoming to visitors
serve يقدم (الطعام)	give food or drink to someone
basbousa بسبوسة	a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup

Help your child identify these words.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

87

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Look and read.



What makes us special



We often **celebrate** things in our **country's** history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Let's look around us and say why we should be **proud** of our **beautiful** country.

غالبًا ما نحتفل بأشياء في تاريخ بلدنا. بلد مثل مصر مشهورة بتاريخها وينبغي أن نستمر في الاحتفال بثقافتها الغنية. دعنا ننظر حولنا ونقول لماذا يجب علينا أن نفتخر ببلدنا الجميلة.

Here are some ideas:

إليك بعض الأفكار:

The food

الطعام

Our food can be described with one word:

wonderful! Maybe the most famous is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, **served** with lots of olive oil and **garlic**.

يمكننا وصف طعامنا بكلمة واحدة: رائع! ربما أشهرها الفول المدمس، وهو فول مطبوخ ببطء شديد، يُقدَّم مع الكثير من زيت الزيتون والثوم.

Maybe you want something **sweet**? How about Basbousa, a thin, sweet **semolina** cake with **syrup**.

ربما تريد شيئًا حلو المذاق؟ ماذا عن البسبوسة. كعكة السميد الرقيقة لحنوة مع الشربات.



The People

الشعب

More than half of **Egyptians** are under the age of 30. This means we are full of energy. We are helpful to each other and we are very friendly to **visitors**. We are very **hospitable** people.

أكثر من نصف المصريين تحت سن الثلاثين. هذا يعني أننا مليئون بالطاقة. نحن متعاونون مع بعضنا البعض ونحس ودودون للغاية مع الزوار. نحن شعب مضياف جدًا.



Lesson (3)

Nature

الطبيعة

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands. Near the Nile it is green and beautiful. There are **mountains** in the south and east. It even snows in the **Sinai region**.

يعتقد الكثير من الناس أن مصر ليست سوى صحراء. صحيح أن ٩٠٪ من مصر صحراء، لكن لدينا مساحات خضراء أيضًا. بالقرب من النيل هناك مناطق خضراء جميلة. توجد جبال في الجنوب والشرق. بل وتتساقط الثلوج في منطقة سيناء.

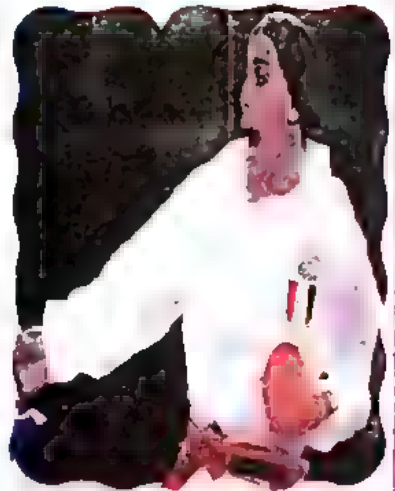


Culture

الثقافة

We make a lot of movies and many of them are **famous**. We have **authors** who won important **prizes**. And of course, we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate player, **Ferial Abdelaziz**.

نصنع الكثير من الأفلام والعديد منها مشهور. لدينا مؤلفون فازوا بجوائز مهمة. وبالطبع نحن نحب الرياضات! كل من يحب لعبة الكاراتيه يعرف اسم لاعب الكاراتيه المشهور، فريال عبد العزيز.



Did you know ?

Ful medames is a very old dish.

Archaeologists found some ful medames in one of the pyramids. It was thousands of years old!

القول المدمس أكلة قديمة جدًا. وقد وجد علماء الآثار بعض القول المدمس في أحد الأهرامات وقد مر عليه آلاف السنين!



Language

Suffix (-ful)

- We can make an adjective by adding (-ful) to the end of a verb or a noun.

يمكننا تكوين الصفة بإضافة المقطع (ful) إلى نهاية الفعل أو الاسم.

Word	الكلمة	Adjective	الصفة
care (v)	يهتم	careful	حريص
pain (n)	ألم	painful	مؤلم
beauty (n)	جمال	beautiful	جميلة
help (v)	يساعد	helpful	متعاون
wonder (v)	يتعجب	wonderful	رائع
use (v)	يستخدم	useful	مفيد
color (n/v)	لون / بلون	colorful	ملون / زاهي الألوان

Note:

The letter "y" in beauty changes into "i" before we add "-ful".

تم تغيير حرف «y» في كلمة «beauty» إلى «i» قبل إضافة اللاحقة «-ful».

Study the following

- I am very careful when I go online.
- I hurt my leg. It's very painful.
- Alia's dress is beautiful. We all love it.
- Those tools are very useful for fixing our door.
- That shirt has red, blue and green stripes. It's very colorful.
- Learning about Egypt is wonderful. It has an amazing history.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We make a lot of
a) **movies** b) **books** c) **plays** d) **chairs**
- Our movies are
a) **boring** b) **famous** c) **bad** d) **unknown**
- won important prizes.
a) **Teachers** b) **Doctors** c) **Authors** d) **Vets**
- Ferial Abdelaziz is a player.
a) **tennis** b) **football** c) **handball** d) **karate**

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

unkind - energy - friendly - hospitable - Egyptians

Egypt is a famous country. More than half of 1) are under the age of 30. This means we are full of 2) We are helpful to each other and we are very 3) to visitors. We are very 4) people.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Egypt is very for its history.
a) **bad** b) **good** c) **famous** d) **proud**
- Our food is I like it.
a) **helpful** b) **bad** c) **awful** d) **wonderful**
- Egypt is a country.
a) **special** b) **private** c) **tiny** d) **small**
- Basbousa is a thin, semolina cake with syrup.
a) **salty** b) **bad** c) **sweet** d) **spicy**
- About 90% of Egypt is
a) **green land** b) **river** c) **desert** d) **lakes**

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 91

6. We have authors who won important
 a) prizes b) stores c) matches d) stories
7. Alia's dress is
 a) beauty b) beautify c) beautiful d) beautifully
8. Learning about Egypt is
 a) wander b) wonderful c) wonder d) wonders
9. I hurt my arm. It's very
 a) useful b) careful c) beautiful d) painful
10. This picture is very It has many colors
 a) colored b) colors c) colorful d) coloring

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

We often celebrate things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Let's look around us and say why we should be proud of our beautiful country. Our food can be described with one word: wonderful! Maybe the most famous is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Egypt is famous for its
 a) history b) math c) English d) science
- 2) The underlined word "famous" means
 a) unknown b) well known c) happy d) proud

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Describe our food.
- 4) What's the most famous food in Egypt?

Lesson (3)

5

Read and match.

اقرأ واصل.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1) region | a) a thin, sweet semolina cake |
| 2) Basbousa | b) friendly and welcoming to visitors |
| 3) special | c) Alia's dress is beautiful. |
| 4) hospitable | d) part of a country |
| | e) having something different |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

6

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Aya's dress is (beauty).
2. Learning English is (wonder).
3. Hend hurt her leg. It's very (pain).
4. I read a (use) book yesterday.
5. This butterfly is (color).
6. My father is (help). He helps all people.

7

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

What makes Egypt special

Guiding words:

(history - food - people - proud)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-RAM

93

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing & Project

Vocabulary لغات

birthday party	حفلة عيد	invitation	دعوة
missing	مفقود	information	معلومات
guest	ضيف	address	خبر

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

the whole class	كل الصف	sports day	يوم رياضي
list	قائمة	road	طريق
musical chairs	كرسي موسيقية	games	ألعاب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs فعل منتظمة

Irregular verbs فعل غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hope	hoped	bring	brought
prepare	prepared	wear	wore
remember	remembered	know	knew
celebrate	celebrated	eat	ate
invite	invited	come	came

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

see you then!	نراك لاحقاً	It'll be fun!	سيكون ذلك ممتعاً
be ready to...	كن على استعداد...	I hope you can come.	أتمنى أن تستطيع المضي.
please come to...	من فضلك تعال إلى...		

Information you need to know in invitations

معلومات تحتاج أن تعرفها في الدعوات

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. The friend's name and address | اسم وعنوان المضيف |
| 2. The date and time of the party | تاريخ ووقت المُناسبة |
| 3. The reason for invitation | سبب الدعوة |
| 4. What to bring | ما تجلبه / تحضره |
| 5. What to wear | ما ترتديه |
| 6. How reply to the invitation | كيفية الرد على الدعوة |

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Invitation

دعوة

Dear Ali

I'm having a birthday party next Thursday at my house. Can you come? I'm inviting the whole class so all our friends will be there. I want to play some party games so bring some music so we can play musical chairs.

When : Thursday, August 12th

What time : 3 pm - 5 pm

Where : 12 Dene Road(my house!)(next to the library)

What to wear : Something blue

RSVP : 9768324590

I hope you can come.

Help your child write an invitation.

ALP

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب دعوة

Look, read, and write.

اقرأ واكتب.

Prepare a class celebration

Steps to do your research

- 1- What are you celebrating?
 - Our class' Sports Day.
- 2- What food and drink do you want?
 - Water and healthy food.
- 3- What games do you want to play?
 - Play lots of games, have fun, and eat lots of healthy food.
- 4- Who is going to prepare the food?
 - The students themselves.
- 5- What do you want guests to wear?
 - T-shirt and shorts.

Invite your classmates to your "Class' Sports Day".

Our Class' Sports Day

Where :

When :

What to wear :

Food and drink :

Games to play :

RSVP :

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

house - Thursday - address - party - school

Dear friend,

It's my sister's birthday party. We're having a party. The 1)
will be on 2), 12th August from 3 pm to 5 pm. It will be
at my 3) The 4) is 12 Dene Road next
to the library. I hope you can come.

2 Punctuate the following sentence. ضم علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

what are you celebrating, Omar

3 Write an invitation to your friend, inviting him to:

اكتب دعوة إلى صديقك لدعوة إلى:

Your brother's birthday party

Guiding words:

(park- 3rd July- eat and drink- play

Review on Unit (9)

Party games ألعاب جماعية

musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية	pass the parcel	لعبة تمرير الطرد
hide and seek	لعبة الاستغماية	rope pulling	لعبة شد الحبل

Unusual festivals احتفالات غير عادية

Cheese rolling	مهرجان دحرجة الجبن	La Tomatina	مهرجان التراشق بالطماطم
Kite festival	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية	Chinese New Year	رأس السنة الصينية

Egyptian food الطعام المصري

Ful Medames (beans)	فول مدمس	garlic	ثوم	olive oil	زيت الزيتون
basbousa	بسبوسة	syrup	شرابات	semolina	سميد

Others كلمات أخرى

present	هدية	seeker	الباحث
traditional	تقليدي	proud of	فخور بـ
hospitable	مضياف / كريم	special	خاص / مميز
authors	مؤلفون	region	منطقة
wrap	يغلف	unwrap	يفتح
winner	فائز	invitation	دعوة
player	لاعب	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
national	قومي	guest	ضيف
history	تاريخ	address	عنوان

Review

Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل، بإضافة **d, ed, ied** للفعل المنتظم.

e.g. I played tennis yesterday.

الأفعال الغير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

e.g. I went to the club last week.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see يرى	saw	give يعطي	gave
run يجري	ran	tell يخبر	told
fall يقع	fell	have / has يتناول / يملك	had
win يفوز	won	throw يلقي / يرمي	threw
fly يطير	flew	wear يرتدي	wore

Suffix (-ful)

Word	Adjective
beauty جمال	beauti ful جميل
care رعاية	careful حريص
pain ألم	painful مؤلم
wonder تعجب	wonderful رائع
color بلون	colorful ملون
help مساعد	helpful متعاون
use يستخدم	useful مفيد

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

"How to play hide and seek"

The seeker closes his eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide and the seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker.

"Why is Egypt special?"

Egypt is famous for its history and its rich culture. Our food is wonderful. We have some special foods, like ful medames and basbousa. The Egyptians are very friendly and hospitable to visitors. We should be proud of our beautiful country.

"A birthday party"

My friends and I were in the park. We celebrated our friend Ali's birthday. We had a big cake. We played football and flew kites. We were very happy.

"An invitation to a birthday party"

Dear Omar,
I'm having a birthday party next Friday. It will be at my house.
Can you come? All my friends will be there. We'll play some party games and have fun.
When: Friday, May 12th
What time? 6 pm - 8 pm
Where: 12 Orabi Street
RSVP: 384621
I hope you can come.

Dictation on Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	تقليدي		يلعب الألعاب
	يشغل الموسيقى		هدايا
	يفتح الهدايا		يلف الهدايا
	لعبة تمرير الطرد		الباحث
	لعبة الاستغماية		لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	رأس السنة الصينية		مهرجان دحرجة الجبن
	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية		مهرجان التراشق بالطماطم
	خبيط		عادات
	غريب		قل

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	رائح		فخور
	السميد		حلو المذاق
	منطقة سيناء		مضيف / كريم
	كاراتيه		مؤلف
	بقدم		المواطنة
	لوم		مميز
	بسيوسة		شريات

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	دعوة		معلومات
	حفلة عيد ميلاد		ضيف
	عنوان		يوم رياضي

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 101

Activities on Unit (9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from **a, b, c, or d**.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- More than half of Egyptians under the age of
a) 10 b) 20 c) 30 d) 40
- Egyptians are to each other.
a) helpful b) careful c) painful d) colorful
- Egyptians are very to visitors.
a) bad b) sad c) friendly d) ugly
- are very hospitable people.
a) French b) Chinese c) Japanese d) Egyptians

2 Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d**.
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I'm of my parents. They are successful.
a) proud b) afraid c) scared d) bad
- Basbousa is a very dessert.
a) sweet b) salty c) bad d) cold
- You should be when you go online.
a) help b) colorful c) painful d) careful
- Mona the present carefully.
a) wraps b) plays c) likes d) listens

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

music - unwraps - present - wraps - person

We all love to give presents. Wrap a small 1) and cover it in lots of paper. The players sit in a circle and play some 2) Players give the present to the next 3) as the music plays. The player who 4) the present keeps it.

Activities

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands. Near the Nile it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) It's true that of Egypt is desert.
a) 70% b) 90% c) 80% d) 20%
- 2) The underlined word "near" is opposite to
a) beautiful b) small c) big d) far

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Where does it snow in Egypt?
- 4) What do people think of Egypt?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We (win) the match yesterday.
2. Hend (celebrate) her birthday last month.
3. The Egyptian food is (wonder).
4. You should be (care) when you cross the road.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

i'm having a birthday party

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Egypt

Guiding words:

(history - proud of - wonderful - hospitable)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 103

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Our food can be described with one word:
a) awful b) bad c) wonder d) wonderful
- The most famous food is
a) ful medames b) kofta c) syrup d) rice
- Basbousa is
a) sour b) salty c) spicy d) sweet

2 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- In musical chairs games run but be ready to
a) walk b) sleep c) sit d) stand
- If you have 6 players, you only need chairs.
a) six b) seven c) eight d) five
- The player without the is out.
a) chair b) bed c) sofa d) desk

2 Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

red - festivals - tomatoes

- Ali : What are you doing?
Hamza : I'm reading a book about unusual 1)
Ali : Is it interesting?
Hamza : Yes, In La Tomatina festival everything becomes 2)
Ali : What happens in it?
Hamza : Everybody throws old 3) at each other.

Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

house - See - party - When

- Reem : Hello, Sara. I'd like to invite you to my birthday 1)
Sara : 2) is it?
Reem : Next Thursday at 3 pm.
Sara : Where is it?
Reem : At my 3) Remember to wear something blue.
Sara : Ok. 4) you then.

Activities on Review (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. **استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.**

- Last weekend we went to
a) **Cairo** b) **Aswan** c) **Alexandria** d) **Damietta**
- Grandma and grandpa live by the
a) **mall** b) **sea** c) **farm** d) **stadium**
- The sea was deep and
a) **red** b) **pink** c) **blue** d) **black**
- We saw lots of
a) **fish** b) **birds** c) **animals** d) **plants**

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.**

- There are lots of high in the city.
a) **buildings** b) **parks** c) **rivers** d) **lakes**
- I'm very I got the highest mark.
a) **sad** b) **worried** c) **pleased** d) **angry**
- We want to buy a of milk.
a) **carton** b) **bar** c) **packet** d) **slice**
- Mona a delicious cake yesterday.
a) **sang** b) **played** c) **made** d) **studied**

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box. **اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.**

colored - weather - spring - parks - summer

My favorite festival is Sham El-Nessim. It is in 1)
We eat 2) eggs. We wear clothes. We go to 3)
It is so special because the 4) is nice.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term





Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Last year we had a party for the International Children's Book Day. It was fun. We dressed like our favorite book characters. We all brought in food connected to our favorite books. For example, I made a cake in the shape of a caterpillar. When I was little, my favorite story was "The Very Hungry Caterpillar". A storyteller came to our classroom and told us lots of stories and poems. The school even gave everyone a free book!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Last year we had a
a) picnic b) lesson c) trip d) party
- 2) A storyteller told us lots of
a) notebooks b) stories c) books d) novels

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) How was the party?
- 4) What shape of cake did you make?



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1) My mother told me an exciting story last night.
- 2) Egypt is a (big / big) country.
- 3) There is a big shopping area in the past.
- 4) How did Ali go to school yesterday?



Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للمجموعة التالية.

what makes Egypt special



Write a paragraph of **TEEN** (18) words about:

اكتب عشرة (18) كلمة عن:

Guiding words

Your favorite festival

(Eid Al Fitr - eataratik - new clothes)

English Language Performance Tasks

أداء اللغة الإنجليزية

School :

Name :

★ You want to tell your friend about the Nile.

⇒ Write about:

- Where is it?
- How long is it?
- What animals live in it?
- How should we keep it?

⇒ Draw the Nile and the land around it.

School :

Name :

★ You want to invite your friend to your birthday party.

⇒ Write about:

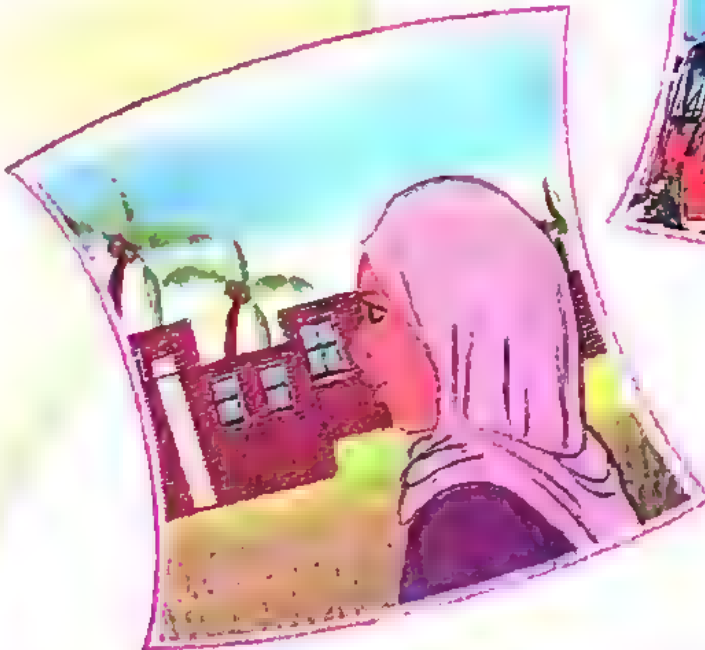
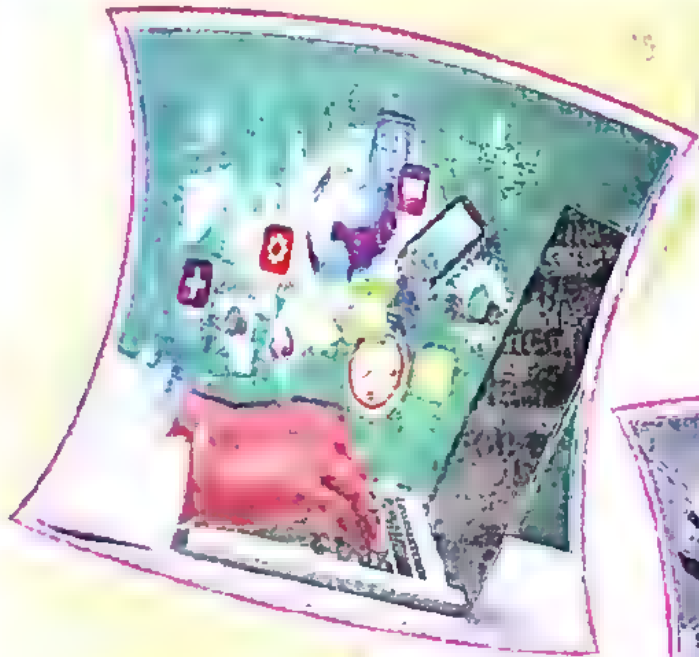
- the date
- the place
- the food
- the number of friends

⇒ Draw a picture of the party.

Theme (4)

I'm a responsible person

أنا شخص مسؤول



Unit 10

I enjoy my life

أنا أستمتع بحياتي



In this unit students will

- listen, read, research, and write about social media.
- give advice with **should**.
- learn and say words that start with (un-).
- read and listen to a short story.
- write about the **pros** and **cons** of computer games.
- research and make a leaflet.

Lesson (1) An Interesting Research

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



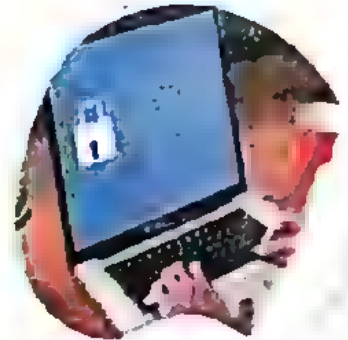
cell phone

هاتف محمول



tablet

تابلت



log in / into

يسجل الدخول إلى



copy

نسخ

Password

password

كلمة مرور



presentation

عرض تقديمي



chat

يحدث



message

يُرسل رسالة / رسالة

Lesson (1)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

website	موقع إلكتروني	chameleon	حمار
information	معلومات	the same	نفس الشيء
idea	فكرة	respectful	محترم
own	يملك / خاص	great	عظيم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
log in يسجل دخول	logged in	find	found
create ينشئ	created	write يكتب	wrote
message يرسل رسالة	messaged	send يرسل	sent
remember يتذكر	remembered	get يحصل على	got
copy ينسخ	copied	know يعرف	knew
chat ي دردش	chatted	make يصنع	made

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

log into / in يسجل الدخول إلى	They're so interesting!	إنه مثير للاهتمام
Wow! واو! (للتعجب)	That's interesting!	هذا مثير للاهتمام
Hooray! مرحى! (صبيحة فرحة)	make a presentation	تقدم عرضاً
What else? ماذا أيضاً؟	the same color as	نفس اللون مثل
do research يجرى بحثاً	chat with	ي دردش مع
all around في كل اتجاه	do homework	يفوه بأداء الواجب المنزلي

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (11)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Mom What are you doing, Dalia?

ماذا تفعلين يا داليا ؟

Dalia I'm doing my homework about chameleons .
They're so interesting! I logged into this library website
and I created a password to get information.

أنا أقوم بأداء واجبي المنزلي عن الخراي. إنهم مثيرون للاهتمام! لقد قمت بتسجيل اسمي في موقع
مكتبة الإلكتروني وقمت بإنشاء كلمة مرور للحصول على معلومات

Mom What does it say?

ماذا يقول ؟

Dalia Chameleons change color. They are the same color
as the place where they are.

تغير الخراي لونها، يكون لونها مثل لون المكان الذي تنوحد فيه

Mom Wow! That's interesting! What else?

واو! هذا مثير للاهتمام! ماذا أيضًا ؟

Dalia They have amazing eyes and they can see all around
but I need to do more research. I want to message
Yara and chat with her. She knows some great
websites.

لديهم عيون رائعة ويمكنهم الرؤية في كل اتجاه. لكنني بحاجة إلى مزيد من الأبحاث.
أريد مراسلة يارا والتحدث إليها. إنها تعرف بعض المواقع الإلكترونية الرائعة.

Mom Are you making a presentation about chameleons?

هل ستقدمين عرضًا عن الخراي ؟

Dalia Yes, I'm making a presentation with Yara. I need to look at
lots of websites and find some nice pictures.

نعم، سأقدم عرضًا مع يارا. أحتاج إلى الذهاب بنظرة على الكثير من المواقع الإلكترونية والعثور على بعض
الصور الجميلة.

Mom Remember to be respectful. Don't copy information.
Find ideas and write your own words.

تذكر أن تقسمي بالاحترام. لا تنسخي المعلومات اغتري على أفكار الآخرين. اكري أفكارك وكتبها بحرية

General Activities

1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Last week I had some homework about
a) monkeys b) elephants c) chameleons d) tigers
- I logged into a website.
a) library b) park c) zoo d) school
- I found on the website.
a) clothes b) information c) money d) shoes
- Miss Lamia loved our
a) book b) homework c) presentation d) website

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- A is a small lizard that can change its color.
a) camel b) chameleon c) monkey d) rat
- I into the library website to get information.
a) log b) go c) walk d) tag
- You should create a strong for your mobile phone.
a) word b) words c) password d) crossword
- I need to do about energy.
a) peach b) research c) sports d) beach
- I want to Yara and chat with her.
a) message b) sleep c) write d) read
- I am making a about chameleons.
a) present b) presentation c) picture d) information
- Don't information. Find ideas and write your own words.
a) read b) copy c) make d) do
- We had a to plan the presentation.
a) bat b) cat c) chat d) hat

3

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

information - interesting - password - research - logged

Yesterday, I had some homework about chameleons.
They're so 1) I 2) into a library website
and created a 3) to get 4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found information. I worked with my friend, Yara. I sent her a message about the information. We had a chat to plan the presentation. She did research on her cell phone because she can't use a tablet. Our teacher, Miss Lamia, loved our presentation! Hooray!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Last week I had some homework about
 a) fish b) camels c) chameleons d) fruits
- 2) I logged into a website.
 a) library b) park c) school d) zoo

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Why did Yara do research on her cell phone?
- 4) Did their teacher love their presentation?

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

what are you doing, Dalia

6 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

An interesting research

Guiding words:

(do research - log in - password - chat - message)

Lesson (2) Staying Safe Online

Listen and repeat.

استمع ورد.



bully

مضيق



have fun

يسعد / يستمتع بوقته



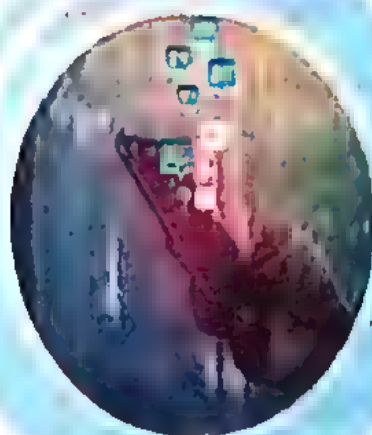
contact

يتصل



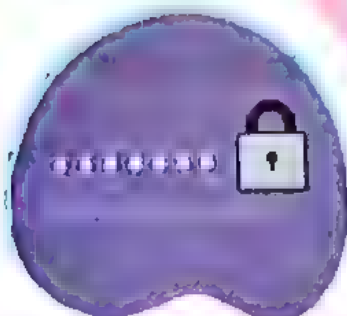
friends

أصدقاء



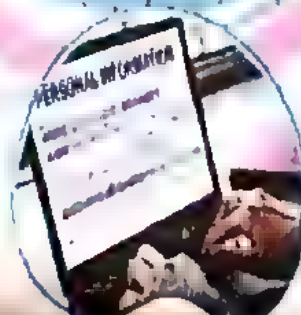
share ideas

يتشارك الأفكار



keep my
password secret

أحافظ على سرية كلمة المرور



personal information

معلومات شخصية



tag

يشير إلى شخص في صورة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 115

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

safe websites	مواقع آمنة	online	على الإنترنت
photo	صورة	creative	مبدع / مبتكر
information	معلومات	scary	مخيف
ugly	البح	strong	قوي
adult	شخص بالغ / شدة	stupid	غبى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
contact	تصل / contacted	find	يجد / found
share	تشارك / shared	think	يعتقد / thought
tag	يشوي / tagged	say	يقول / said
bully	تتم / bullied	keep	يحافظ / kept
check	تحقق / راجع / checked	take	ياخذ / took

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

turn off	يطفى / pros and cons	مميزات وعيوب
at night	ليلاً / accept to	يوافق أن
make friends	يكون صداقات / check with	يتحقق مع
only friends	الأصدقاء فقط / have a problem with	لديه مشكلة في
That's horrible!	هذا فظيع / That's really cool!	هذا رائع حقاً

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



'Social media' is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and information and have fun.

"وسائط التواصل الاجتماعي" هي عندما نستخدم أجهزة الكمبيوتر والأجهزة الأخرى لمشاركة الأفكار والخواطر والمعلومات والاستمتاع بوقتنا.



Pros and cons of social media



Pros مميزات



You can have fun.

يمكنك أن تستمتع بوقتك/ تفرح.



You can learn interesting things.

يمكنك تعلم أشياء جديدة.



You can share photos.

يمكنك مشاركة الصور.



You can be creative.

يمكنك أن تكون مبدعاً.



You can play games.

يمكنك لعب الألعاب.



You can find information for your homework.

يمكنك العثور على معلومات لواجبك المنزلي.



You can talk to friends and family.

يمكنك التحدث مع الأصدقاء والعائلة.



Cons عيوب



People you don't know
can contact you.

يمكن للأشخاص لا تعرفهم الاتصال بك.



Some people can bully you.

يمكن أن تتعرض للتنمر من بعض الأشخاص.



People can tag you in photos
when you don't want them to.

يمكن للأشخاص الإشارة لك في صور وأنت لا ترغب أن يفعلوا ذلك.



People can take your personal
information.

يمكن للأشخاص الحصول على معلوماتك الشخصية.

Staying safe online

البقاء آمنًا عبر الإنترنت



Do (✓)

You **should** accept to be friends
only with people you know.

يجب أن تقلل أن تكون صديقًا فقط للأشخاص الذين تعرفهم.

You **should** keep your password
secret.

يجب عليك الحفاظ على سرية كلمة المرور الخاصة بك.

You **should** keep your personal
information secret.

يجب عليك الحفاظ على سرية معلوماتك الشخصية.

Don't (×)



You **shouldn't** give your
password to **anyone** who asks.

يجب ألا تعطي كلمة المرور الخاصة بك لأي شخص يطلبها.

You **shouldn't** tell everyone
your birthday and your phone
number.

يجب ألا تخبر الجميع بعيد ميلادك ورقم هاتفك.

You **shouldn't** make new
friends online.

يجب ألا تكون صداقات جديدة عبر الإنترنت.



Online bullying

Magdy

Wael, you know I started at the new school?

وائل هل تعرف أنني بدأت في المدرسة الجديدة؟

Wael

Yes. Is it nice?

نعم، هل هي جميلة؟

Magdy

Yes, but I had a problem with online bullying. There was a boy in my class, Sherif, who was sending me messages.

نعم، ولكن لدي مشكلة مع التنمر الإلكتروني. كان هناك ولد في فصولي، شريف، كان يرسل لي رسائل.

Wael

What did he say?

ماذا قال؟

Magdy

He said I was stupid and no one liked me.

قال أنني غبي ولا يحبني أحد.

Wael

That's horrible! Did you tell anyone?

هذا شيء قبيح! هل أخبرت أحدا؟

Magdy

Yes, my dad. He went to the school and talked to my teacher. He showed my teacher the messages from Sherif.

نعم، أبي. ذهب إلى المدرسة وتحدث مع معلمي وعرض على معلمي بعض الصور من شريف.

Wael

What did your teacher do?

ماذا فعلت معلمتك؟

Magdy

She spoke to Sherif and Sherif's parents. They all stopped the bullying. They said I shouldn't talk to Sherif online.

تحدثت مع شريف ووالديه توقفوا جميعًا عن التنمر. وقالوا إنني يجب ألا أتكلم مع شريف عبر الإنترنت.

Wael

And Sherif?

وشريف؟

Magdy

He said sorry to me. But I feel much happier now! I know what I should do about online bullying now - keep the messages and tell an adult quickly.

اعتذر لي. ولكنني أشعر بمساعدة أكثر الآن! أنا أعرف ما يجب علي فعله بشأن التنمر الإلكتروني الآن. احتفظ بالرسائل وأخبر شخصًا بالغًا سريعًا.

Wael

That's really cool! When are you coming to see me?

هذا رائع حقًا! متى سنأتي لزيارتي؟

Language

Giving advice:

تقديم النصيحة:

Subject + should + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

We use "should" to talk about things that are **good for** us to do.

نستخدم (should) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- I should only give my phone number to my friends.
- I should turn my phone off at night.

Subject + shouldn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

We use "shouldn't" to talk about things that are **bad for** us to do.

نستخدم (shouldn't) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من غير المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- I shouldn't use my phone late at night.
- You shouldn't make new friends online with people you don't know.



Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You accept to be friends only with people you know.
a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) can't
2. You keep your password secret.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) should d) aren't
3. You give your password to anyone who asks.
a) shouldn't b) need to c) must d) should
4. You tell everyone your birthday and your phone number.
a) want b) shouldn't c) must d) should
5. You should your personal information secret.
a) keep b) keeps c) kept d) keeping

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Magdy started a new
a) zoo b) school c) park d) class
2. Magdy had a problem with online
a) shopping b) playing c) bullying d) studying
3. Sherif said that Magdy was
a) stupid b) smart c) fast d) nice
4. Now Magdy is
a) stupid b) bad c) sad d) happy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You tell your parents when someone bullies you online.
a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't
2. I keep my password secret.
a) can't b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't
3. I give my password to anyone.
a) should b) must c) can d) shouldn't
4. Facebook is the most famous social website.
a) life b) media c) device d) equipment
5. People can ideas on social media.
a) go b) share c) chat d) stay

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق.

teacher - websites - should - adult - contact

To be safe online, you 1) use strong password. You should 2) only friends. You should use safe 3) If you have any problem, you should check with an 4)

لا يجب على اى طفل التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 121

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

"Social media" is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts and information and have fun. Social media have some pros. You can have fun. You can share photos. You can talk to your friends and your family. You can find information for your homework. You can be creative. You can play games. But they have some cons, too. People you don't know can contact you. People can take your personal information. Some people can bully you.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) You can share on social media.
 a) phones b) photos c) books d) paper
- 2) Some people can you on social media.
 a) play b) bully c) pull d) learn

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Who can you talk to on social media?
 4) How can social media help you do your homework?

5

Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

you can play games

6

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Pros and cons of social media

Guiding words:

(fun - information - tag - bully)

Lesson (3) Reading

Vocabulary المفردات

neighbors	جيران	problem	مشكلة
restaurant	مطعم	one hour	ساعة واحدة
unhealthy	غير صحي	apartment	شقة سكنية
matter	مسألة / أمر	together	سويًا / معًا
the same	نفس الشيء	outside	بالخارج

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
stop يتوقف عن	stopped	meet يقابل	met
agree يوافق	agreed	know يعرف	knew
thank يشكر	thanked	give يعطي	gave
decide يقرر	decided	leave يغادر	left
ask سأل	asked	understand يفهم	understood

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the restaurant	في المطعم	play with	يلعب (مع - بـ)
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	have fun	يمرح / يستمتع بوقته
go outside	يخرج	play together	يلعبون سويًا
decide to	يقرر أن	at the end of	في نهاية
do homework	يلوم بأداء الواجب المنزلي	That's a lovely idea.	هذه فكرة رائعة.

Ask your child to identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

123

Read the story and answer.

How two neighbors helped each other?

كيف ساعد اثنان من الجيران بعضهما البعض؟



Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad.
لقد التقى هدير بجارتها رانيا في المطعم. كانت رانيا حزينة.

Hadeer asked, "What's the matter, my friend?" Rania answered, "It's my children, Nancy and Nader. They love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. I don't know what to do".

سألت هدير: "ما الأمر، يا صديقتي؟ أجابت رانيا: "إنهم أطفالتي، نانسي ونادر. إنهما يحبان لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر. ولا يريان واجبهما المدرسي. ولا يخرجان. لا أعرف ماذا أفعل."

Hadeer said, "Yes, it is a problem. Tarek, my son, is the same. He often plays computer games. That's really unhealthy. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should do other things. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park".

ألت هدير: "نعم إنها مشكلة. طارق ابني نفس الشيء. غالبًا ما يلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر وهذا غير صحي فعلاً. ويجب أن يتوقف الأطفال عن اللعب بعد ساعة واحدة. يجب عليهم فعل أشياء أخرى. يجب أن يلعبوا مع أصدقائهم. يجب أن يذهبوا إلى الحديقة."

Rania said, "Yes, I agree." Hadeer said, "Let's find games where they can play with friends. Tarek would love to play more with Nader. Can Nader come to our apartment? They can play together and have fun." Rania said, "That's a lovely idea. And they can go to the park together. Thank you, Hadeer!"

قالت رانيا: "نعم، أوافقك الرأي" قالت هدير: "لنجد ألعابًا حيث يمكنهم اللعب مع الأصدقاء. سيحب طارق أن يلعب مع نادر. هل يمكن أن يأتي نادر إلى شقتنا؟ يمكنهما اللعب معًا والاستمتاع. قالت رانيا: "هذه فكرة رائعة. ويمكنهما الذهاب إلى الحديقة معًا. شكرًا لك يا هدير"

Lesson (3)

- 1) Why was Rania unhappy?
- 2) Where did Hadeer and Rania meet?
- 3) What advice did Hadeer give her friend?

Tip!

un- = not

You can add **un-** at the beginning of a word to get the opposite meaning.

يمكنك إضافة **un-** في بداية الكلمة للحصول على عكس المعنى.



healthy

صحي



unhealthy

غير صحي



happy

سعيد



unhappy

غير سعيد



kind

عطوف



unkind

غير عطوف



Give the opposite of the words using the prefix "un-".

usual →

2) tidy →

kind →

4) like →

clear →

6) finished →

your child use un- to give opposites.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم un- لإعطاء عكس الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

12



General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from **a, b, c, or d**.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Hadeer met her neighbour, Rania, at the
a) café b) restaurant c) park d) school
- Rania was
a) sad b) happy c) angry d) smart
- Rania's love playing computer game.
a) parents b) neighbors c) friends d) children
- They don't do their
a) food b) exercises c) homework d) rooms

2 Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d**.

الإجابة الصحيحة.

- They love computer game
a) cooking b) playing c) eating d) drinking
- They don't their homework
a) make b) did c) do d) play
- Playing computer games for a long time is
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) kind
- Children can play together and
a) play b) sleep c) read d) have
- is the matter?
a) Why b) Where c) What d) How
- Smoking is very It's bad for you.
a) unhealthy b) healthy c) kind d) good

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

الكلمات للكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- 1) is - What - matter - the - ?

Lesson (3)

2) don't - their - They - homework - do - .

3) meet - did - Where - and - Hadeer - Rania - ?

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad. Her children Nancy and Nader love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. She doesn't know what to do. Tarek, Hadeer's son, is the same problem. That's really unhealthy. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Rania is Hadeer's
a) **neighbor** b) child c) sister d) **grandma**
- 2) Rania's children love
a) **playing football** b) playing tennis
c) playing computer games d) playing basketball

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where did Hadeer and Rania meet?
- 2) When should children stop playing computer games?

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

where did Hadeer and Rania meet

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأمثلة.

AL-BAHER • Connect (4) - Second Term (127)

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing & Projects

Vocabulary المفردات

pros	مزايا	parents	الوالدين
cons	عيوب	screen	شاشة
reason	سبب/مبرر	team	فريق
prize	جائزة	leaflet	نشرة - كتيب
opinion	رأي	headings	العناوين الرئيسية
too much	كثير جدًا	together	معًا / سوياً

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
need	يحتاج	needed		say	يقول	said	
solve	يحل	solved		give	يعطي	gave	
believe	يعتقد	believed		spend	يقضي	spent	
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed		make	يصنع	made	
watch	يشاهد	watched		find	يجد	found	

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

good for	مفيد لـ	find a prize	جائزة
bad for	ضار لـ	search for	تبحث عن
spend hours on	يقضي ساعات على	in my opinion	في
solve problems	يحل مشكلات	give advice about	النصح بشأن
at the end	في النهاية	make friends	صداقات
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	find out	يكتشف

Pros and cons of computer games

Paragraph 1

Bad things about computer games

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

Paragraph 2

Good things about computer games

But, on the other hand, there are some reasons why computer games are good for children. In some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

Paragraph 3

My opinion

I really like computer games where I go outside. I go with my uncle and my friends. We like these games because you find a prize at the end. In my opinion, we can enjoy games, but we need to have other things in our lives like sports and time with our family.

Pros	Cons
Children need to solve problems.	They spend many hours on computers.
They can have prizes.	They don't go outside or do homework.
They make friends.	It is not healthy for children.
They play with their family.	They make them lazy.

Help your child write about the pros and cons of computer games.

مساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن مميزات وعيوب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.

How to write a pros and cons essay:

كيف تكتب مقالاً عن مميزات وعيوب شيء ما

- 1- Begin your essay by introducing your topic.
١- ابدأ المقالة بمقدمة عن الموضوع الخاص بك.
- 2- The main body usually consists of two paragraphs: The first paragraph presents the pros of the issue and the second paragraph presents the cons of the issue.
٢- يتكون الموضوع الرئيسي عادة من فقرتين: تقدم أول فقرة إيجابيات القضية وتعرض لأخرى سلبيات القضية.
- 3- In the final paragraph, give your opinion.
٣- في الفقرة الأخيرة، أعرض رأيك.



عند كتابة مميزات وعيوب شيء ما، ينبغي أن تستخدم العبارات التالية

- 1- Many people think that
١- يعتقد كثير من الناس أن
They also believe that
كما يعتقدون أيضًا أن ...
- 2- On the other hand, some people think that (To show contrast)
٢- ومن ناحية أخرى، يعتقد البعض أن (لتوضيح التناقض)
- 3- In my opinion, (To give an opinion)
٣- وفي رأيي (الإبداء الرأي)

Watching too much TV

Paragraph 1

Many people think that watching too much TV is bad for children as they spend too many hours watching it. They also believe that it is a waste of time.

Paragraph 2

On the other hand, some people think that watching TV is good for children. They can watch educational programs and football matches. They also think that it is useful. Children can watch religious programs.

Paragraph 3

In my opinion, we can enjoy watching TV, but we should watch useful programs.

Project

Look and read the leaflet.

STOP ONLINE BULLYING NOW

Research بحث

- Find out about bullying online
 - Look for help online
- تعرف على التنمر عبر الإنترنت.
- ابحث عن المساعدة عن الإنترنت.

What to do ماذا تفعل

- Tell people about bullying online
 - Give advice about bullying
- أخبر الأشخاص عن التنمر عبر الإنترنت.
- قدم نصائح عن التنمر.



What to do more ماذا تفعل أكثر

- Make posters or leaflets and put them around the school
- Talk to teachers and parents

- صمم ملصقات أو منشورات وضعها في أنحاء المدرسة.
- تحدث إلى المعلمين وأولياء الأمور.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Many people say that computer games are ... for children.
a) bad b) good c) useful d) nice
- Children can spend ... hours on their computers.
a) few b) many c) small d) big
- Children don't go ... while playing games.
a) inside b) indoor c) outside d) into
- Parents say that playing computer games isn't
a) healthy b) good c) well d) unhealthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Computer games are bad children.
a) in b) at c) by d) for
- Children can spend many hours their computers.
a) in b) for c) on d) at
- In some games, children need to problems.
a) solve b) make c) drink d) play
- In some games, children friends and play with their family.
a) do b) make c) play d) eat
- There are pros and of computer games.
a) point b) cons c) coins d) cans
- In my , computers are good for children.
a) think b) believe c) idea d) opinion

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1) Children need | a) information on the internet. |
| 2) We can enjoy playing | b) friends online. |
| 3) They make | c) to solve problems. |
| 4) You can search for | d) computer games. |
| | e) children don't go outside. |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

don't (to) I enjoy my life

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Computers are very important. We need them everywhere. They are necessary for everyone. Computers have many pros and cons. They are bad for children because they spend many hours playing games. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents think this is not healthy for their children. On the other hand, computers are also good for them. In some games they need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Computers have many and cons.
a) pears b) pros c) bears d) prices
- 2) Children friends and play with their family.
a) eat b) play c) make d) see

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What do children need in some games?
.....
- 4) Do children go outside while playing games?
.....

5 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة (لشأنية من 18) كلمة عن:

Pros and cons of social media

Guiding words:

(good - research - homework - fun - spend - safe)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (18)

Review on Unit (10)

Social Media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

cell phone	هاتف محمول	tablet	نابلت
password	كلمة مرور	message	رسالة / يرسل رسالة
copy	ينسخ	chat	بدرش
presentation	عرض	chameleon	حرباء
log in / into	يسجل دخول	bully	يقتنم / التتمر
contact	يتصل	have fun	يمرح
online	على الانترنت	opinion	رأي
tag	بشير إلى / إشارة	neighbours	جيران
unhealthy	غير صحي	unhappy	غير سعيد
pros	مزايا	good for	مفيد لـ
cons	عيوب	bad for	ضار لـ

(✓) Pros of social media

- You can have fun.
- You can find information for your research / homework.
- You can learn interesting things.

(x) Cons of social media

- Some people can bully you.
- People you don't know can contact you.
- People can take your personal information.

Language Giving advice:

Subject (الفاعل) + **should** (ينبغي أن) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

يستخدم (should) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- I should only give my phone number to my friends.

Subject (الفاعل) + **shouldn't** (لا ينبغي أن) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

يستخدم (shouldn't) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من غير المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- We shouldn't sleep late.

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

"Social media"

Social media is when we use our computers to share ideas. You can have fun. You can play games. On the other hand, some people can bully you. People can tag you in photos.

"Pros and cons of social media"

Many people think that social media is useful. We can post messages. We can search for information very easily. We like our friends' photos. They also believe that it is useful that you can send emails. On the other hand, some people think that social media is bad. Children waste their time. They spend many hours playing computer games. In my opinion, it is useful if we use social media for a short time. It is bad if we spend much time on it.

"An interesting research"

Last week, I did an interesting research about the panda. I logged into the library website to get information. I messaged Yara because she knows some great websites. Our teacher liked our research.

"Online bullying"

Online bullying is to say unkind words about someone on social media. We should give advice about bullying. We should make posters or leaflets and put them around the school to stop this bad habit. We should talk to teachers and parents to stop bullying. Finally don't bully or don't be a bully.

Dictation on Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	كلمة مرور		الحرية
	يجري بحثاً		رسالة
	يسجل دخول		يبردش
	محترم		يلسخ
	عرض		تأملت

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	يتصل		يشارك الأفكار
	بشر إلى شخص في صورة		غبي
	يتنمر		مميزات وعيوب
	معلومات		أصدقاء
	مبدع		مخيف

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	مشكلة		جيران
	مسألة / امر		غير صحي
	يقابل		يقدر
	يلعب مع		يمح
	شفة سكنية		مقا

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	شاشة		يقضي ساعات على
	في رأي		يحل مشكلات
	نشرة - كتيب		يكشف
	والدين		لريق
	العناوين الرئيسية		جائزة

Activities on Unit (10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from **a, b, c, or d**.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Last week I had some homework about
a) spiders b) fish c) chameleons d) birds
- I into a library website.
a) logged b) played c) created d) studied
- I worked my friend, Yara.
a) at b) with c) to d) in
- Miss Lamia our presentation.
a) hated b) thanked c) threw d) loved

2 Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d**.
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I use the to make calls.
a) computer b) radio c) TV d) phone
- Don't people.
a) like b) love c) bully d) help
- I created a to get information.
a) password b) card c) website d) phone
- Mona logged the library website.
a) in b) into c) up d) at

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

into - password - logged - interesting - chameleons

I'm Ramy. I'm doing my homework about 1)

They are so 2) I logged 3) a library website

and I created a 4) to get information.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Omar. I'm in primary four. I'm ten years old. I go to school every day. I get up at six o'clock. My school is near my home, so I go on foot. My school is big and clean. My teachers are kind and helpful. I love my school very much.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Omar is in primary
a) five b) four c) three d) six
- 2) Omar goes to school
a) by car b) by taxi c) on foot d) by plane

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) When does Omar get up?
- 4) How are the teachers at Omar's school?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We (should) talk to people we don't know online.
2. Esraa should (studies) hard.
3. You (shouldn't) stay safe online.
4. Eman should (helped) her friends.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

i worked with my friend, Yara

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Research about chameleons

Guiding words:

(interesting - amazing eyes - see - color).

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Last week I had some homework about
a) **chameleons** b) lizards c) rats d) cats
- I logged into a library
a) **book** b) website c) story d) novel
- I created a password to get information.
a) **weak** b) tall c) long d) strong

Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Many people say that computer games are for children.
a) **good** b) healthy c) kind d) bad
- Children can spend many on their computers.
a) **hours** b) minutes c) seconds d) days
- Parents say this is not for their children.
a) **healthy** b) unhealthy c) kind d) unkind

2 Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

chameleons - about - research - color

- Toka : What are you doing, Reem?
Reem : I'm doing a 1) online.
Toka : What is it 2) ?
Reem : It's about 3)
Toka : What do you know about them?
Reem : Chameleons change 4) They have amazing eyes.

Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

help - should - unhappy - bullied

- Ahmed : Why are you 1) ?
Mariam : Someone 2) me on social media.
Ahmed : You 3) tell your parents.
Mariam : I told them and they will 4) me.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (139)

Unit 11

What can we do?

ماذا نستطيع أن نفعل؟



In this unit students will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about transportation.
- practice making sentences with need and must.
- learn about different transportation.
- read and listen to a short story.
- learn about and say words that begin with tr and cr, and diphthongs ai, oa, and ea.
- write about how to stop air pollution.
- research and make a leaflet about road safety.

Lesson (1) Transportation

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



ship

سفينة



metro

مترو



bus

أوتوبيس / حافلة



plane

طائرة



Transportation

وسائل المواصلات



boat

مركب / قارب



taxi

سيارة أجرة (تاكسي)



train

قطار

your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك التعرف على هذه الكلمات

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (041)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

vehicle	مركبة	air	هواء - جو
around	حول	city	مدينة (كبيرة)
road	طريق	under	تحت / أسفل
airport	مطار	train station	محطة قطار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
move يسير	moved	ride يركب	rode
travel يسافر	traveled	come يأتي	came

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go through	يسافر عبر	around the city	حول المدينة
get to school	يصل إلى المدرسة	catch a bus	يلحق / يركب الحافلة
class quiz	اختبار صفي	far from	بعيد عن
Have a nice day!	أتمنى لك يوماً جميلاً!	cool!	رائع
on foot	سيرا على الأقدام	on water	على الماء
on a rail	على سكة حديد	on the road	على الطريق

Did you know ?

The Ghan in Australia is the longest passenger train in the world. It is about 774 meters long. The train has up to 44 passenger carriages.

يعد قطار الغان في أستراليا أطول قطار ركاب في العالم، يبلغ طوله حوالي ٧٧٤ متراً، يمكن أن يصل إلى ٤٤ عربة ركاب.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Seleem : Hi Maged! I'm doing a class quiz about public transportation.

مرحبًا يا ماجدا أنا أقوم بعمل اختبار صفي عن المواصلات العامة.

Maged : Cool!

رائع!

Seleem : How do you get to school?

كيف تصل إلى المدرسة؟

Maged : I come to school on foot.

أنا آتي إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.

Seleem : Do you ever catch the bus or metro?

هل سبق لك الركوب الحافلة أو المترو؟

Maged : Only if I'm late. I like to come on foot so I can meet my friends.

فقط إذا كنت متأخر. أنا أحب المجيء سيرًا على الأقدام حتى أستطيع مقابلة أصدقائي.

Seleem : Thanks! Ramy, how do you get to school?

شكرًا لك! كيف تصل إلى المدرسة يا رامي؟

Ramy : I come by car with my dad.

أنا آتي بالسيارة مع أبي.

Seleem : Do you ever catch the bus or metro?

هل سبق لك الركوب الحافلة أو المترو؟

Ramy : Yes, if my dad is not in town, I take the bus. I like it.

نعم، إذا كان والدي ليس في المدينة؛ فأنا أركب الحافلة. أنا أحبها.

Seleem : Why?

لماذا؟

Ramy : We travel slowly and I can see the city.

نحن ننتقل ببطء ويمكنني رؤية المدينة.

Seleem : Do you ever come to school on foot?

هل سبق لك أن أتيت إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام؟

Ramy : No, my house is very far from the school.

لا، إن منزلي بعيد جدًا عن المدرسة.

Seleem : Thanks! Have a nice day!

شكرًا لك! أتمنى لك يومًا جميلًا!

Ramy : You too!

ولك أيضًا!

your child listen and read a dialog about ways

getting to school.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ حوارًا عن طرق الوصول للمدرسة.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

143



Language

Means of Transport Prepositions

حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات

by

تأتي (by) قبل جميع وسائل المواصلات بشرط أن لا يأتي أداة نكرة أو معرفة أو صفات ملكية بينها وبين وسيلة المواصلات.

by car

by bus

by taxi

by ship

in

تأتي (in) مع كلمتي (taxi / car) بشرط وجود أداة نكرة أو معرفة أو صفات ملكية بين (in) ووسيلة المواصلات.

in a car

in a taxi

in my car

in his taxi

on

تأتي (on) مع كل باقي وسائل المواصلات بشرط وجود أداة نكرة أو معرفة أو صفات ملكية بين (on) ووسيلة المواصلات.

on a bus

on a ship

on a plane

Remember

- on foot

- on rail

- on water

- on road

Examples:

✚ When I travel by plane, I go through the air.

✚ When I travel by ship and boat, I am on the water.

✚ When I travel by bus and car, I am on the road.

✚ When I travel to Luxor from Cairo by train, I move on a rail under the vehicle.

✚ We go to the airport to travel by plane.

✚ A train moves on a rail and we ride from a train station.

✚ I travel by bus around the city.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- When I travel by, I go through the air.
a) plane b) bus c) train d) car
- When I travel by ship, I'm on the
a) road b) rail c) water d) air
- When I by bus, I'm on the road.
a) play b) sing c) travel d) run
- I travel to Luxor from Cairo train.
a) at b) on c) in d) by

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We travel plane through the air.
a) in b) on c) by d) at
- A moves on a rail.
a) ship b) train c) plane d) bus
- We travel on by ship or boat.
a) air b) rails c) roads d) water
- I go to school foot.
a) in b) at c) on d) by
- Cars and buses are means of
a) sports b) transportation c) pollution d) colors
- I go to the zoo the bus
a) by b) on c) in d) at
- I like to go to school bike.
a) by b) on c) in d) of
- Who comes to school the car?
a) on b) by c) in d) at

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

transportation - by - bus - travel - in

I'm Malak. I'm nine years old. I go to school by 1)

It's my favorite 2) Sometimes I go with my father

3) car. My family and I 4) by train on holidays.

Help your child deal with such questions.

AL-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

45

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4

Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Yesterday my family and I went to Aswan to visit our uncle. We went by train. We rode a train from a train station. We moved a rail under the vehicle. My favorite transportation is a train. I loved traveling by train. It's clean and fast. My brother likes going through the air more. He likes traveling by plane. My father's favorite is the bus.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) Yesterday, we went to

a) Alexandria

b) Cairo

c) Giza

d) Aswan

2) We went by

a) bus

b) train

c) plane

d) car

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What is your favorite transportation?

4) When did you go to visit your uncle?

5

Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية

who likes traveling by bus

6

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة (ثمانية عشر) من (18) كلمة عن:

Transportation

Guiding words:

(plane - air - rail - water - ship)

Lesson (2 / A)

Road Safety

Vocabulary المفردات

sign	لافتة	road safety	السلامة على الطريق
important	هام / مهم	helmet	خوذة
seat belt	حزام أمان	necessary	صوري
safely	بأمان	safe	أمن
right	يمين	green light	الضوء الأخضر / إشارة خضراء
left	يسار	danger	خطر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
need يحتاج	needed	wait ينتظر	waited
cross يعبر	crossed	ride يركب	rode
turn توجه / يتعطف	turned	swim يسبح	swam
park يركن سيارة	parked	show بين - يظهر	showed

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go straight	سير للأمام مباشرة	in danger	في خطر
turn right	اتجه يميناً	in the middle of	في منتصف
stop here	توقف هنا	divide into	ينقسم إلى
wait for	ينتظر	safe roads	طرق آمنة
ride a bike	يركب دراجة	cross the road	يعبر الطريق

help your child identify these words

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

47

Road safety

السلامة على الطريق

You need a **green light** to cross the road.

نحتاج إلى إشارة خضراء كي نعبّر الطريق.



You need to look **left and right**.

نحتاج أن ننظر يسارًا ويمينًا.



You need a **helmet** on your bike.

نحتاج إلى خوذة وأنت تركب الدراجة.



You need a **seat belt** in your car.

نحتاج إلى حزام أمان في سيارتك.



Road signs

لافتات الطريق

You can go **straight** and turn right.

يمكنك السير للأمام مباشرة والاتجاه يمينا.



Stop here and **wait** for a green light.

توقف هنا وانتظر إشارة المرور الخضراء.



You can't **swim** here.

لا يمكنك السباحة هنا.



There are sometimes **camels** on the road.

يوجد أحيانًا جمال على الطريق.



Language

need

Usage

We use "need" when something is important or necessary. نستخدم الفعل (need) لتبين أهمية أو ضرورة عمل شيء ما.

Subject (الفاعل) + need + noun (الاسم)

e.g. You **need** a **helmet** on your bike.

e.g. You **need** safe roads.

Subject (الفاعل) + need to + Inf. (المصدر)

e.g. You **need to look** left and right.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You a seat belt in your car.

- a) **needing** b) **need to** c) **need** d) **needs**

2. You need to a helmet.

- a) **wears** b) **wearing** c) **wear** d) **wore**

3. You to look left and right when you cross the road.

- a) **read** b) **need** c) **drink** d) **play**

4. You a green light to cross the road.

- a) **must** b) **can** c) **need** d) **should**

5. You need left and right.

- a) **looked** b) **to look** c) **looking** d) **look**

6. We safe roads.

- a) **need to** b) **needs** c) **needing** d) **need**

Lesson (2 / B)

Be careful on the roads

Vocabulary المفردات

young man	شاب	wrong	خطأ
motorbike	دراجة نارية (مخارية)	right	صواب - صحيح
crosswalk	ممر مشاة	hospital	مستشفى
shocked	متصدع	interesting	شيق
leg	ساق	boring	ممل
ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	kind	طيب - عذوف
fast	سريع		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

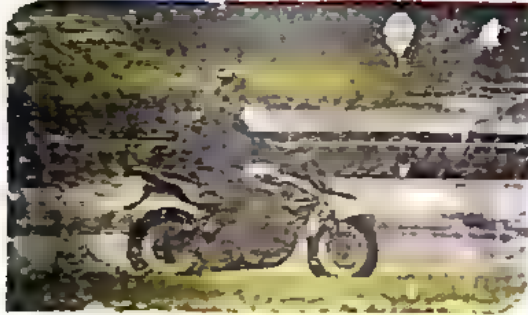
Present	Past	Present	Past
work	يعمل worked	drive	يقود drove
stop	يتوقف stopped	hurt	يصيب - يؤذي hurt
call	يتصل called	feel	يشعر felt
learn	يتعلم learned	understand	يفهم understood
follow	يتبع followed	wear	يرتدي wore
want	يريد wanted	fall	يسقط fell

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

be careful	كن حريصاً / احذر	fall over	يسقط
in a hurry	في عجلة من أمره / متعجل	feel bad	يشعر بالسوء
too fast	سريع جداً	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
cross the street	يعبر الشارع	call for	يطلب
by motorbike	بدراجة نارية	drive through	يقود خلال

Be careful on the roads!



Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind.

Hani is a **young man**. He works in the city and he goes to work by **motorbike**. Today, he was **in a hurry**.

Mazen and Dalida walk to school together. They cross the road at the **crosswalk**.

مazen وداليدا أخ وأخت وهما يدرسان مترابطهما، معلميهما طيبون للغاية. هاني شاب صغير يعمل في المدينة ويتجهز
بـ عجلة الموتوسيكل. اليوم كان في عجلة من أمره. ذهب مازن وداليدا إلى المدرسة معاً سيراً على الأقدام. ويعبر
شارع عند معبر المشاة.

Today, they walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road. Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk. Then Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast.

Mazen **fell over**. He was very **shocked**. Dalida was scared, but she wanted to help her brother.

اليوم، مشوا إلى معبر المشاة وانتظروا حتى تتوقف السيارات، ثم مشوا في الطريق. مشى مازن إلى منتصف معبر المشاة،
ثم دخل هاني درجته البخارية خلال معبر المشاة. لم يتوقف لأنه كان يسير بسرعة كبيرة. وقع مازن، وكان مصدوماً للغاية.
كانت داليدا خائفة ولكنها أرادت أن تساعد أخاهما.

Hani stopped to help. Mazen wanted to go to school, but he hurt his leg. Hani called for an ambulance.

Mazen is now at the hospital with his mom and sister. Hani is feeling very bad.

في المستشفى، لم يبق مازن بل ذهب للمدرسة، ولكن ساقه كانت مصابة. اتصل هاني بالإسعاف. مازن الآن
في المستشفى مع والدته وأخته. يشعر هاني بالسوء.

Lesson (3 / A)

- Language - Pronunciation

When we give strong advice, we use:

عندما نعطي نصائح قوية نستخدم.

Sub. (الفاعل) + **must** + inf. المصدر يجب أن

e.g. We must listen for cars before we cross the road.

Sub. (الفاعل) + **mustn't** + inf. المصدر يجب ألا

e.g. You mustn't run on the road.

Taking Notes

تكوين لملاحظات

When we take notes, we don't write complete sentences. We write important words.

عندما ندون «ملاحظات»، لا نكتب جملًا كاملة ولكننا نكتب الكلمات الهامة.

Notes

Advice

cross - crosswalk

You must cross at the crosswalk.

don't run - roads

You mustn't run on the roads.

wear seat belt in car

You must wear seat belt in the car.



Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d**.

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة

- We must at the crosswalk
a) cross b) crosses c) crossing d) crossed
- We run on the roads
a) can b) mustn't c) must d) should
- We must the road signs.
a) follows b) following c) followed d) follow
- We must for cars before we cross the road
a) listens b) listened c) listen d) listening

Pronunciation

cr /kr/



crash

بصطدم



crosswalk

ممر ساحة



crowd

حشد / ازدحام

tr /tr/



truck

شاحنة



train

قطار

Diphthongs / Long vowels الإدغام / الأصوات المتحركة لطويلة

Two vowel sounds pronounced together, making one long vowel sound.

صوتان متحركان ينطقان معاً ليعطوا صوتاً ممدوداً واحداً.

ai /eɪ/

rai

مطر

oa /oʊ/

float

تطفو

ea /i:/

clean

تنظيف

snail

حلزون

boat

مركب / قارب

dream

حلم

train

قطار

coat

معطف

sea

بحر

Help your child say words that begin with (tr) and (cr) and diphthongs ai, oa, and ea.

ساعد طفلك أن ينطق الكلمات التي تبدأ بـ (tr) و (cr) وإدغام الحروف (ai) و (oa) و (ea).

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

155

General Activities

1 Look and write the missing sound. انظر واكتب الصوت المفقود.



__uck



sn__l

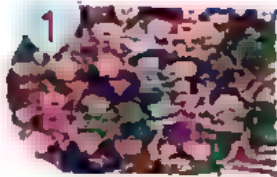


c__t



__ash

2 Look, circle, and write. انظر وضع دائرة واكتب.



__owd



cl__n

3



r__n

3 Read and circle the odd sound out. اقرأ ثم ضع دائرة حول الصوت الغريب.

1. crowd - crash - crosswalk - train

2. dream - sea - float - clean

3. rain - coat - boat - float

4 Read and sort. اقرأ واصلف.

crash - dream - sea - snail - crosswalk - truck - train - rain

tr

cr

ea

ai

Lesson (3 / B)

Air Pollution

Vocabulary المفردات

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	mask	كمامة / قناع	asthma	الربو
dangerous	خطير	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	fires	نيران
electric buses	حافلات كهربائية	dirty	قذر - متسخ	heating	جهاز التدفئة
photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئي	rice straw	قش الأرز	crops	محاصيل
polluted air	هواء ملوث	sick	مريض	shade	ظل
solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	idea	فكرة	clean	ينظف / نظيف

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
breathe يتنفس	breathed	put يضع	put
cough يكح / يسعل	coughed	make يصنع / يسبب	made
cycle يركب دراجة	cycled	feel يشعر	felt
cover يغطي	covered	take يأخذ	took
allow يسمح	allowed	drive يقود	drove
plant يزرع	planted	buy يشتري	bought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

put into	يضع ... في ...	parts of	أجزاء من
drive to	يوصل بالسيارة إلى	go into	يدخل في
dangerous for	خطير على	burn straw	يحرق القش
worried about	قلق بشأن	have asthma	مصاب بالربو
look pretty	تبدو جميلة	take a bus	يستقل حافلة

your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يميز على هذه الكلمات.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (57)



Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

1 : Today I am talking to Doctor Helen Waiker about air pollution. Helen, why are you worried about this subject?

أنا اليوم أتحدث مع الدكتورة هيلين واكر عن تلوث الهواء. هيلين، لماذا أنت قلقة من هذا الموضوع؟

2 : Because one of my sons has very bad asthma and I think it is because of the dirty air in our city. I wanted to say something to help him and other children.

لأن واحد من أبنائي يعاني من الربو الشديد، أعتقد أنه بسبب الهواء القذر في مدينتنا. أردت أن أقول شيئاً لمساعدته وللمساعدة لأطفال آخرين.

3 : What can we do to help make the air cleaner?

ما يمكننا فعله لمساعدة الهواء أن يصبح أنظف؟

4 : I have some ideas. First of all, we need to cut the amount we use our cars. We can try to buy from stores near our house. Children can try to walk to school.

لدي بعض الأفكار. أولاً، نحتاج أن نخفض كمية استخدامنا للسيارات. يمكننا محاولة شراء من المتاجر القريبة من منزلنا. يمكن للأطفال محاولة المشي إلى المدرسة.

5 : But sometimes children live a long way from school.

لكن أحياناً يعيش الأطفال على بعد مسافة طويلة من المدرسة.

6 : Then they could go by bike or maybe take the bus.

يمكنهم الذهاب بالدراجة أو ربما بالترامبول.

7 : Good idea, many schools have buses. What are your other ideas?

فكرة جيدة. العديد من المدارس لديها حافلات. ما أفكارك الأخرى؟

8 : Try not to have open fires at home. If it's cold, use the heating. And use renewable energy if you can, like solar power - renewable energy keeps the air clean!

حاولي ألا تحرق النار في المنزل. إذا كان الجو بارداً، استخدمي جهاز التدفئة. واستخدمي الطاقة المتجددة إذا استطعت. مثل الطاقة الشمسية. الطاقة المتجددة تحافظ على نظافة الهواء.

9 : Oh, that's helpful. What about more trees?

أوه، هذا مفيد. ماذا عن المزيد من الأشجار؟

10 : Yes, that's an excellent idea. We need to plant trees. Trees clean the air because they use the chemicals for their growth through photosynthesis. They also make cities look pretty and give us shade on a hot day!

نعم، هذه فكرة ممتازة. نحن بحاجة لزراعة أشجار. تقوم الأشجار بتنظيف الهواء لأنها تستخدم المواد الكيميائية لنموها من خلال عملية البناء الضوئي. كما أنها تجعل المدن تبدو جميلة وتضللنا نهاراً في الأيام الحارة!

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اسمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Farmers wanted to have _____ air.
a) cleaner b) dirtier c) bad d) polluted
2. They stopped burning _____ straw.
a) corn b) rice c) bean d) wheat
3. They used the straw to make _____.
a) drinks b) gas c) food d) juice
4. They used the straw to cover their _____.
a) animals b) fish c) water d) crops

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. Cars make air _____.
a) pollute b) pollution c) polluting d) pollutes
2. The boy is wearing a _____ to protect himself from pollution.
a) hat b) mask c) skirt d) cap
3. Cars put _____ into the air.
a) fruits b) vegetables c) oxgen d) chemicals
4. Chemicals are _____ for us.
a) safe b) kind c) dangerous d) good
5. We _____ when we breathe polluted air.
a) sleep b) cough c) laugh d) cry
6. The children in England _____ to school.
a) swim b) try c) cycle d) fly
7. _____ buses don't make air pollution.
a) Electricity b) Flying c) Petrol d) Electric
8. Farmers stopped _____ rice straw.
a) burning b) eating c) recycling d) growing
9. Farmers used the straw to _____ their crops.
a) cover b) uncover c) eat d) sell
10. You can only walk or _____ a bus in this city.
a) bake b) make c) take d) do

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

chemicals air pollution cough run dangerous

Cities have many cars. Cars make They put into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we and feel sick.

4

Read the text and answer the questions.

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Some cities are trying to stop air pollution. In London, England, parents don't drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses don't make air pollution.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) Cars put chemicals into the

a) air

b) water

c) ...

d) ...

2) In China, they have electric ...

a) planes

b) ships

c) ...

d) ...

B) Answer the following questions.

1) What is the general idea of the text?

2) How do children in England go to school?

5

Write a paragraph of 100-150 words about:

Air pollution

cars chemicals dangerous cough

(4 & 5)

Writing & Project

Vocabulary المفردات

energy-saving lightbulbs	لمبات موفرة للطاقة
public transportation	وسائل مواصلات عامة
car-sharing	مشاركة السيارة
car-free roads	طرق خالية من لسيارات
cycle	يركب الدراجة

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

classmates	زملاء الفصل	fresh air	هواء نقي
road signs	لافتات الطريق	traffic	حركة المرور
factories	مصانع	apartment	شقة سكنية
balcony	شرفة / بلكونة	report	تقرير

Verb conjugation تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
share	يشارك / شارك	travel	يسافر / سافر
decide	يقرر / قرر	cross	يعبر / عبر
improve	يحسن / حسّن	hear	يسمع / سمع
reduce	يقلل / قلّل	put	يضع / وضع
increase	يزيد / يزداد		

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the moment	على جانب	go with	يذهب مع
talk about	يتكلم عن	information about	معلومات عن
go to the	يقرر ان	in the same car	في نفس السيارة
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	on the balcony	في الشرفة / البلكونة

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Youssef's report

Last week I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution.

I liked her idea and I did some research. I talked to my family about what we can do:

لاستماع لساعتين سمعت الدكتورة هيلين والكر تتحدث عن تلوث الهواء. لقد أعجبتني أفكارها وقمت ببعض الأبحاث تحدثت مع عائلتي حول ما يمكننا القيام به:

We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment.

We can use buses and trains more.

We can share a car with a friend sometimes.

We can walk and not always go by car.

We can have many plants on our balcony.

يمكن أن يكون لدينا مصابيح كهربائية موفرة للطاقة في شقتنا

يمكننا استخدام الحافلات والقطارات أكثر

يمكننا مشاركة السيارة مع صديق في بعض الأحيان

يمكننا المشي ولا نذهب دائما بالسيارة

يمكن أن يكون لدينا العديد من النباتات في شرفتنا

We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to

work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work.

She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister, Noura,

walks to her school.

قررنا تغيير بعض الأشياء كعائلة. يذهب أبي الآن للعمل مع صديقه في نفس السيارة. تركب أمي الحافلة إلى العمل. هي

لا تقود سيارة. أنا أذهب الآن إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. تمشي أختي نورا إلى مدرستها.

We have more plants in the living room and on the balcony.

When our lightbulbs stop working, we can put in energy-saving

lightbulbs. I'm

Youssef

لدينا المزيد من النباتات في غرفة المعيشة وفي الشرفة.

عندما تتوقف مصابيحنا الكهربائية عن العمل، يمكننا وضع مصابيح موفرة للطاقة. أنا متحمس!

يوسف

Your child read about ways to reduce air pollution.

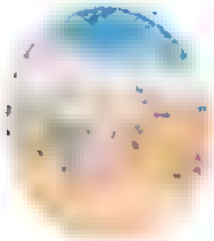
AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (163)

ساعد طفلك أن يفهم عن طرق لتقليل تلوث الهواء.

Listen and read.

ستمع واقرأ.

Good ideas to reduce air pollution



Don't burn rice straw.

لا تحرق قش الأرز.

Have cleaner gas in cars.

ضع غاز أكثر نظافة في سيارتك.

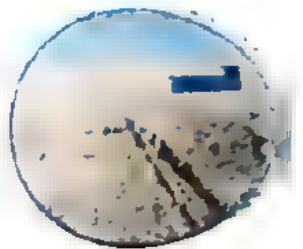


Increase public transportation.

قم بزيادة استخدام وسائل النقل العام.

Have some car-free roads.

تخصيص بعض الطرق الخالية من السيارات.



Travel on foot or by bike.

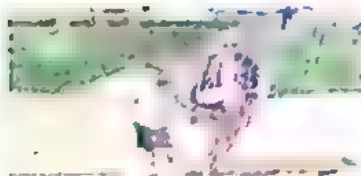
تنتقل سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة.

Project Road safety leaflet

ROAD SAFETY

main heading

عنوان رئيسي



sub-heading

عنوان فرعي



صورة فوتوغرافية

paragraph

فقرة

Be safe on the road

Use the crosswalks.

Walk slowly - don't run.

Watch the traffic

Listen for cars.

Don't cross from behind a car.

Read the road signs

Read the road signs.

They give you important information about the road.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة

1. Don't burn straw to keep the village clean
a) tomato b) rice c) carrot d) potatoes
2. Increase transportation to have clean air
a) individual b) special c) private d) public
3. Have cleaner in cars
a) gas b) water c) milk d) juice
4. Have some free roads to reduce air pollution
a) car b) train c) plane d) boat
5. Travel foot or by bike to your work
a) by b) in c) on d) at
6. We should have more plants on our
a) car b) bus c) balcony d) like
7. He goes to work with his friend the same car
a) at b) on c) in d) by
8. My dad likes - sharing
a) boat b) train c) car d) plane

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات في الصندوق

balcony- lightbulbs- plants- excited- exciting

We decided to change some things to reduce air pollution. We have more 1) in the living room and on the 2) When our 3) stop working, we can put in energy-saving lightbulbs. I'm 4)

*your child deal with such questions.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة

We can do a lot of things to reduce air pollution. We can have energy - saving lightbulbs in our apartment. We can use buses and trains more. We can share a car with a friend sometimes. We can walk and not always go by car. We can have many plants on our balcony. We also shouldn't burn rice straw. We should have cleaner gas in cars.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) We can use and train more.
a) planes b) buses c) cars d) taxis
- 2) We can a car with a friend.
a) buy b) reduce c) share d) burn

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Should we burn rice straw? Why?
- 4) What can we do in our apartment to reduce air pollution?

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words about:

اكتب فقرة من ثمانين (80) كلمة عن:

How to be safe on the road

Guiding words:

crosswalks slowly don't run road signs)

Revision on Unit (11)

Vocabulary

metro	مترو	transportation	وسائل المواصلات	shocked	متصدع
bus	اتوبس/حافلة	ambulance	عربة إسعاف	fell over	سقط
plane	طائرة	rail	سكة حديد	left	يسار
boat	قارب	in a hurry	في عجلة من أمره/متعجل	right	يمين
train	قطار	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	by bus	بالأوتوبس
taxi	تاكسي	on foot	سيراً على الأقدام	through air	عبر الجو

Idioms

cr

tr



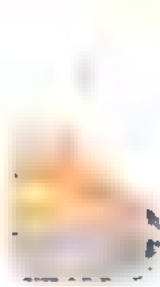
crash



crowd



crosswalk



burn



truck

Language

- You need a seat belt in your car.
- You need to look left and right.



You can go straight and turn right.



You can't swim here.



You must wait for the green light.

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of **100-150** () words about:

"Means of transportation"

There are many kinds of transportation. Trains move on a rail. We can see ships and boats on the water. We can see cars, buses and taxis on our roads.

"My favorite transportation"

My name is Ziad. I'm in primary four. My favorite transportation is a ship. I love traveling on water. I enjoy seeing the water and the wonderful trees around it. I also like being on a boat.

"Road safety"

We should be careful on the road to be safe. We must listen for cars before we cross the road. We must wear seat belts in cars. We need a helmet on our bikes. We mustn't run at the crosswalk.

"Air pollution"

Air pollution is very dangerous. Cities have many cars. They put chemicals into the air. Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In England, children walk or cycle to school.

Dictation on Unit (11)

Word	Meaning
	أتوبيس / حافلة
	قطار
	سيرًا على الأقدام
	سفينة
	على الماء

Word	Meaning
	مترو
	قارب
	تاكسي
	طائرة
	سيارة

Word	Meaning
	خوذة
	بأمان
	شاب
	اصطدام - تصدم
	معبر المشاة
	لافتة
	كن حذرًا

Word	Meaning
	حزام أمان
	السلامة على الطريق
	اتجه يمينًا
	زحام
	متعجل
	الضوء الأخضر
	سيارة إسعاف

Word	Meaning
	شاحنة
	مطر
	حلزون

Word	Meaning
	مواد كيميائية
	مريض
	كمامة - قناع

Word	Meaning
	مشاركة السيارة
	يقفل
	لافتات الطريق

Word	Meaning
	مصابيح موفرة للطاقة
	يُحسن
	هواء نقي

Ask your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit 11

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وقم بوضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- Mazen and Dalida are brother and
a) sister b) child c) cousin d) uncle
- They love their
a) park b) zoo c) school d) library
- Their teachers are very
a) bad b) useless c) unkind d) kind
- Their father is a
a) doctor b) vet c) teacher d) nurse

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- When I travel by, I go through the air.
a) train b) plane c) car d) bus
- You need a in your car.
a) cycle b) helmet c) seat belt d) mirror
- We go to the to travel by plane.
a) station b) airport c) bus stop d) school
- Hani called for a/an because Mazen hurt his leg.
a) car b) bus c) ambulance d) train

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

by - same - near - takes - far

We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the 1) car. Mom 2) the bus to work. I now go to school 3) bike. My sister, Noura, walks to school because her school is 4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

امراة تلتصق وادب عن الامانة

Mazen and her sister Dalia walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. Yesterday, they walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road.

Today, Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk. Then Hani drove his motorbike through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast. Mazen fell over. He was very shocked. Dalia was scared, but she wanted to help her brother.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) Dalia is Mazen's
 a) brother b) mum c) sister d) friend
- 2) The word "fast" means
 a) slowly b) happily c) carefully d) quickly

B) Answer the following questions.

3) How do Mazen and Dalia go to school?

4) Why didn't Hani stop?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

امراة واختب اشكل الصحيح للاكساف التي بن الامواس.

1 We need to (wears) a helmet on our bikes.

2 You (must) run on roads.

Help your child deal with such questions.

A-BAHER-Connect (4)

3. Farmers must (stopped) burning rice straw.
 4. We (need to) a seat belt in our cars.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية

mazen and Dalia go to school on foot

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن.

Reducing air pollution

Guiding words:

(burn straw- bike- share car- electric buses)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- My favorite transportation is a
a) ship b) car c) plane d) bike
- I love traveling on
a) air b) water c) foot d) rail
- I go to school on
a) bike b) foot c) bus d) taxi

Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- Mazen and Dalia are and sister.
a) brother b) father c) grandpa d) mother
- They love their
a) home b) school c) park d) city
- The teachers are very
a) unkind b) kind c) happy d) unhappy

2 Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ واكمل المحادثة بـ

travel - favorite - plane - air

Toka : What's your 1) transportation?

Reem : I love traveling by 2)

Toka : How does a plane 3) ?

Reem : It travels through 4)

Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ واكمل المحادثة بـ

helmet - safe - school bike

Ali : How do you go to 1) ?

Ahmed : I go by 2)

Ali : What do you need to be 3) ?

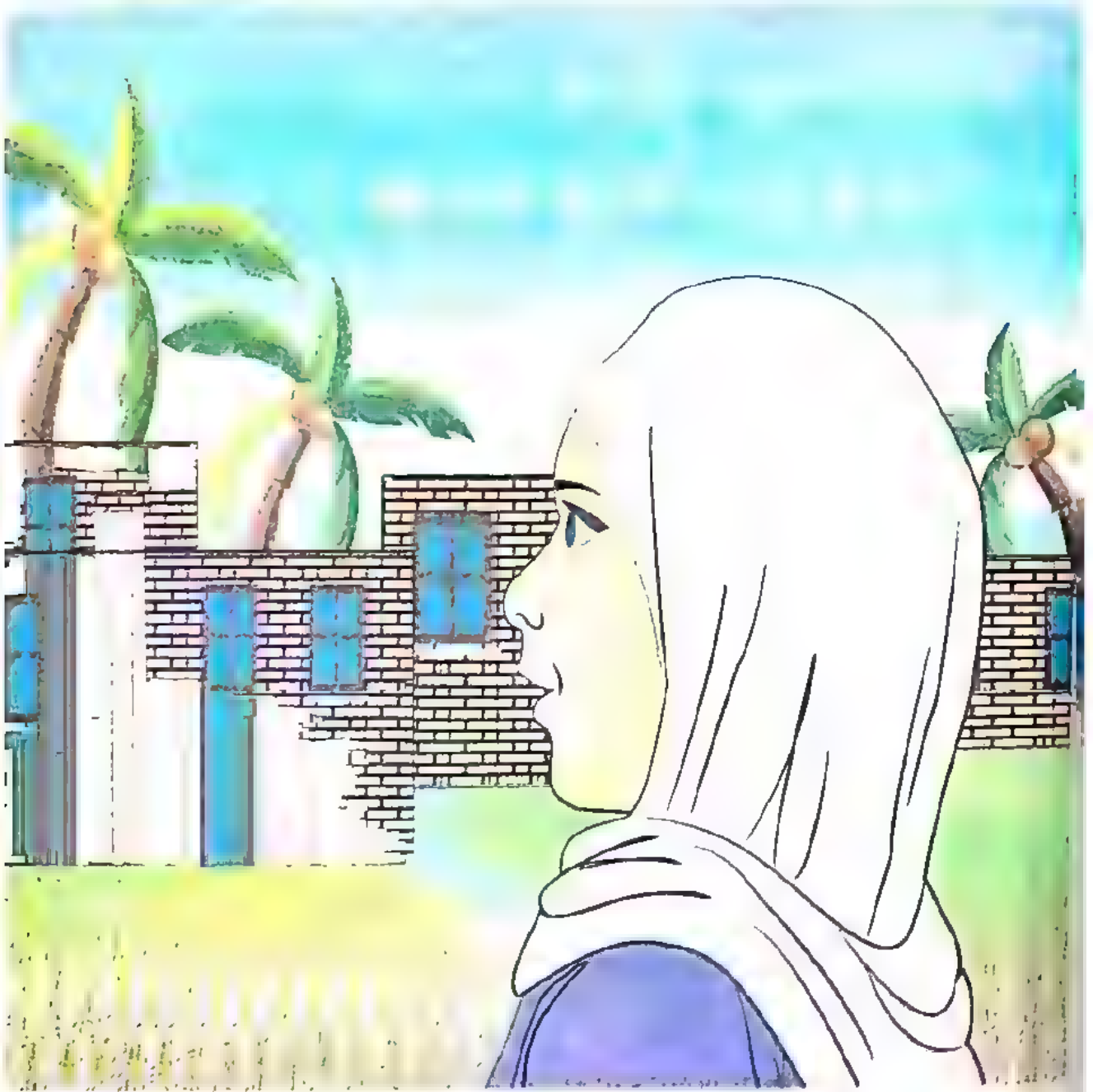
Ahmed : I need a 4) on my bike.

Unit 12

FICTION READER

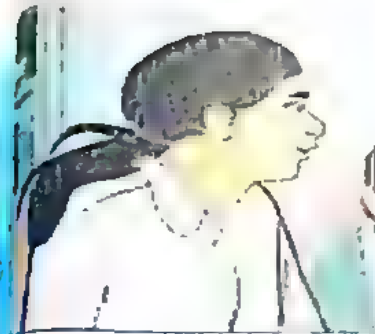
DALIA SAVES THE VILLAGE!!

داليا تنقذ القرية!



BY NICOLA GARDNER

The Characters



Dalia



Grandpa



Grandma



Karek
(Dalia's brother)



Gameela
(Dalia's mom)



Waleed
(Dalia's dad)

The setting المكان والزمان

Places

- A village in Egypt
- Dalia's house
- Grandparents' house

Time

- morning
- evening

your child identify the characters of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف عن شخصيات القصة.

PICTURE DICTIONARY

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



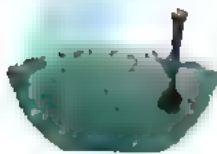
wheat
قمح



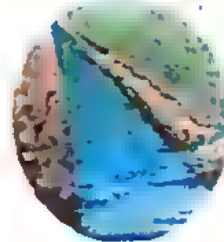
crop
محصول



maize
ذرة



irrigation
الري



irrigation canal
قناة الري



wheat flour
دقيق قمح



- Dalia does research about crops in Egypt.
- The crops are not growing well in the village.
- Dalia contacts everyone in the village on social media.



The irrigation canal is blocked with trash.
The villagers start to clear the trash.
Now the water isn't polluted.



The water comes back and the crops grow again.
Some villagers start to grow wheat.
The villagers make bread and biscuits to sell them.

Beginning

The Problem

المشكلة



Dalia lives in a **village** in Egypt. One evening she is doing her homework on her computer. She is doing research about crops in Egypt, like wheat, maize, and rice, and it is very interesting.

Wheat is an important crop in our country and we use it to make bread. Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian bread. Dalia likes baladi bread best. Which is your favorite?

تعيش داليا في قرية في مصر. ذات مساء تقوم داليا وجينا بمذاكرة على حاسبها الآلي. وتجرى بحثا عن المحاصيل الزراعية في مصر مثل القمح والذرة والأرز. وهذا شيق للغاية. القمح محصول هام في بلدنا ونستخدمه في صناعة الخبز. تنظر داليا إلى صور الخبز المصري اللذيذ. وأفضل خبز نخبه هو الخبز البلدي. ما هو خبزك المفضل؟

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 177



Dalia's mom, Gameela, is speaking to Dalia's dad, Waleed, who looks sad. 'The crops are not growing well in the village. There is a problem with the water and we have no **irrigation**,' says Gameela to Dalia. 'We need to help everyone in the village with their crops.' Dalia's brother, Tarek, says, 'But what can we do?' Dalia says, 'It's very simple. Let's call everyone in the village on **social media**. We need to help our village.'

تحدثت حنيئة، والدة داليا، مع والدها، والي، الذي يبدو حزينا. 'المحاصيل لا تنمو جيداً في القرية. هناك مشكلة في المياه ولا يوجد ري. نحن بحاجة إلى مساعدة الجميع في القرية. يجب علينا أن نساعد الجميع في القرية. نحن بحاجة إلى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. نحن بحاجة إلى مساعدة القرية.'





Dalia's family gets water from the Nile. But the irrigation canal is not working. She tells everyone in the village about this problem on social media, then meets everyone in the **main square**.

A lot of villagers say they can help.

تخبر داليا الجميع في القرية عن هذه المشكلة عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. ثم تلتقي الجميع في **المساحة الرئيسية**.
يقول الكثير من القرينين إنهم يمكنهم المساعدة.

Activities

1 Read and tick (✓) or (✗).

- 1) Dalia lives in a village in Egypt.
- 2) Dalia is a teacher.
- 3) Dalia is doing research about crops.
- 4) Dalia doesn't like baladi bread.
- 5) The crops are not growing well in the village.
- 6) Dalia doesn't want to help her village.
- 7) The irrigation canal is not working.
- 8) Villagers don't want to help.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

water - crops - village - social media - baladi

- 1) Dalia lives in a in Egypt.
- 2) Dalia is doing research about in Egypt.
- 3) Dalia likes bread best.
- 4) There is a problem with the in the village.
- 5) Dalia calls everyone in the village on

3 Answer the following questions.

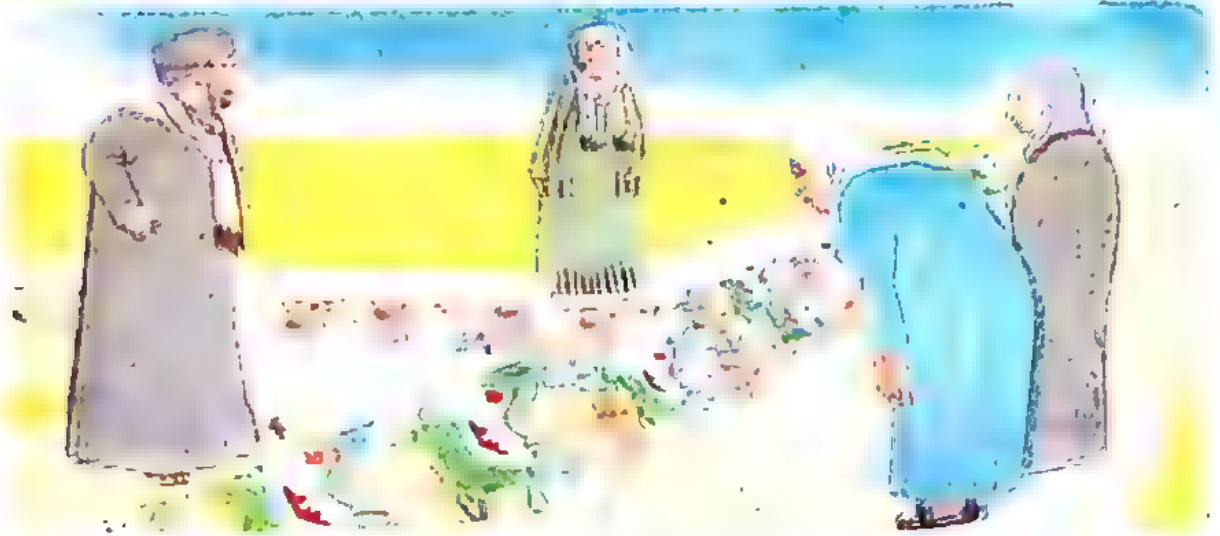
- 1) Where does Dalia live?
.....
- 2) What does Dalia like best?
.....
- 3) Why are not the crops growing well in the village?
.....
- 4) How does Dalia call everyone in the village?
.....



The next day everyone gets together in the center of the village. Some people come on foot, and some by bike. Some people come by boat or by car from another village to help.

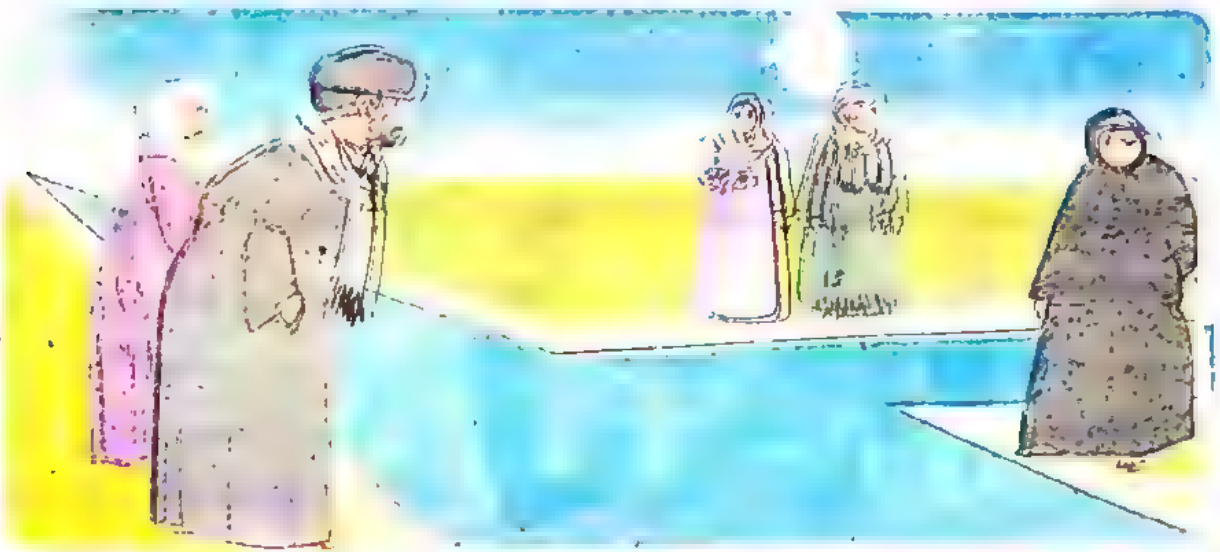
Everyone is very excited to help with the problem. They meet at Dalia's grandparents' house. Dalia's grandma gives them tea and cookies.

وفي اليوم التالي يجتمع الجميع في وسط القرية. يأتي بعض الناس سيرا على الأقدام ، والبعض يأتي بالدراجات. وبعض الأشخاص بالقارب أو بالسيارة من قرية أخرى للمساعدة. الجميع متحمس للمساعدة في حل هذه المشكلة. يتقابلون في منزل أجداد داليا. وتقدم جدة داليا لهم الشاي والكعك.



Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal that brings the water is **blocked** with trash – plastic bottles and **household** things. There are also some plants in the water. Tarek says, 'We need to start work and clean the water.' The water is not very deep and they start to clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with the trash. Now the water isn't polluted.

تذهب داليا وأسرتها لمعاينة المشكلة. يتبين أن فتاة الري التي تمدهم بالماء مسدودة بمخلفات مثل زجاجات البلاستيك والأغراض المنزلية. كما يوجد أيضاً بعض النباتات في الماء. يقول طارق "نحن بحاجة إلى أن نبدأ العمل وننظف المياه." المياه ليست عميقة جداً ويبدأون في إزالة القمامة. ويقومون بمليء عشرين كيساً من القمامة. وبعد ذلك أصبح عمر ملوث.



DALIA SAVES THE VILLAGE!



The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again. Everyone is very happy. They can grow food on their land and they can sell their fruit and vegetables to buy other things. Their lives become easier. But some of the crops are not very good.

تعود الماء إلى القرية وتنمو المحاصيل مرة أخرى. الجميع سعداء، حيث يمكنهم زراعة الطعام في أراضيهم ويمكنهم بيع فاكثهم وحضراتهم لشراء أشياء أخرى. تصبح حياتهم أسهل، ولكن بعض المحاصيل ليس بحسن جيدة.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 183

Activities

1 Read and tick (✓) or (x).

- 1) The villagers are excited to help with the problem. .
- 2) The villagers meet at Dalia's house.
- 3) Dalia's grandma gives the villagers coffee. .
- 4) The irrigation canal is blocked with trash.
- 5) They fill 20 trash bags with the trash.
- 6) The water doesn't come back to the village.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

tea - cookies - excited - villagers - crops - trash -
blocked - plants

- 1) Everyone is very _____ to help with the problem.
- 2) The _____ meet at Dalia's grandparents' house.
- 3) Dalia's grandma gives them _____ and _____.
- 4) The irrigation canal is _____ with trash.
- 5) There are some _____ in the water.
- 6) The villagers fill 20 _____ bags with the trash.
- 7) The water comes back to the village and the _____ grow again.

3 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where do the villagers meet?

- 2) Who gives the villagers tea and cookies?

- 3) Why is the irrigation canal blocked?

- 4) What do they do with the irrigation canal?

End

Dalia's Plan

خطة داليا



Dalia has a **plan**. She thinks the villagers can produce more food. She says they should try wheat — she tells them about her research. She says wheat grows very well in Egypt and is great for making delicious bread and cakes.

Some villagers like the idea — they start to grow wheat in some of their fields.

لدى داليا خطة - تعتقد داليا أن حل لغربة يمكنهم إنتاج مزيد من الغذاء. ويقول إنه يسعي عليهم تجربة زراعة القمح ونخبرهم عن بحثها. وتقول إن القمح يمو بشكل جيد جدًا في مصر وهو رائع لصناعة الخبز والكعك اللذيذ. بعض أهل القرية تعجبهم الفكرة ويبدأون في زراعة القمح في بعض حقولهم.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

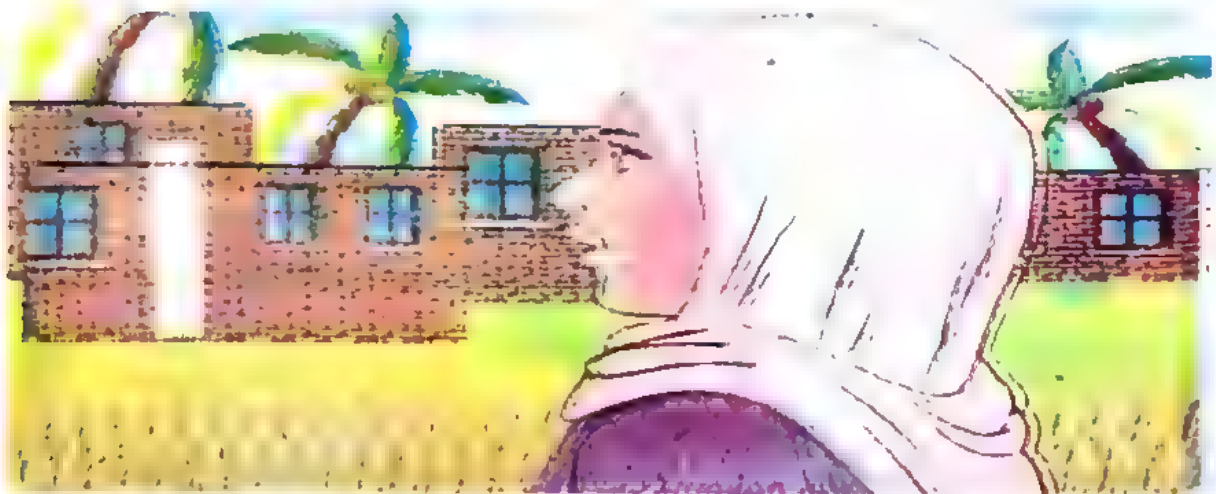
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 185



From the wheat they can make flour. From the flour they can make delicious Egyptian bread. Grandma can make more of her awesome cookies. The villagers make bread and cookies to sell to other villages.

يمكنهم صناعة الخبز من الدقيق. من الدقيق يمكنهم صنع الكعك الرائع. يمكنهم صنع المزيد من الكعك الرائع. يمكنهم صنع الخبز والكعك لبيعهم في القرى الأخرى.



In a few years, everything is better in the village. Dalia walks around the village and sees the changes. She is very proud. When she grows up, she works with agriculture to help other people with their crops.

في بضع سنوات، كل شيء أصبح أفضل في القرية. داليا تمشي في القرية وتراعى التغييرات. إنها فخورة جداً. عندما تكبر، تعمل في الزراعة لمساعدة الآخرين في محاصيلهم.

Activities

1 Read and tick (✓) or (✗).

- 1) Dalia thinks the villagers can produce more food.
- 2) Wheat doesn't grow well in Egypt.
- 3) The villagers make flour from the wheat.
- 4) The villagers sell bread and cookies to other villages.
- 5) Everything is worse in the village.
- 6) Dalia is very proud.

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box

agriculture - bread - cookies - some villagers - Wheat - plan -
flour - proud

- 1) Dalia has a
- 2) grows very well in Egypt
- 3) The grow wheat in some of their fields.
- 4) The villagers make from the wheat.
- 5) The villagers make and to sell to other villages.
- 6) Dalia is very of the village.
- 7) When Dalia grows up, she works with

3 Answer the following questions.

1) What is Dalia's plan?

2) What can villagers make from the wheat?

Activities on Review (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. It's to be safe online.
a) unimportant b) important c) useless d) bad
2. You keep your password secret!
a) shouldn't b) should c) mustn't d) can't
3. You should to be friends only with people you know.
a) share b) keep c) accept d) make
4. You share your personal information.
a) shouldn't b) must c) can d) should

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Cars and buses are means of
a) transportations b) foods c) information d) sports
2. I try to be and think about new ideas.
a) stupid b) creative c) bad d) angry
3. You must wait for the lights to cross the street.
a) red b) yellow c) green d) black
4. I wear the on my head when I ride my bike.
a) watch b) shirt c) helmet d) socks

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

logged in - tagged - mom - shouldn't - should

Last week I wasn't very happy with my friend.

My friend 1) me in a photo and it showed on my social media page. When I 2), I saw the photo. I was buying a present for my 3) for her birthday and it was a surprise! I talked to my other friend and he said, "You 4) change your settings so you can check photos you are tagged in!"

Review (4)

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My favorite transportation is by boat. When you are on the water, you can see the river animals and plants. It is also very peaceful because you only hear the water. I like ships too, but I prefer smaller transportation on the water. Buses are good too, but sometimes they get very crowded, particularly after school and work, when lots of people go home. It's better when they're empty and you are on the bus with one or two people. You can see a lot of the city from the bus. But the problem is you stop all the time!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) My favorite transportation is by
a) ship b) boat c) plane d) bike
- 2) You can see the river animals and
a) plants b) stars c) planets d) schools

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What is the main idea of the text? :
- 4) When do buses get very crowded?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. You (need to) a helmet when you are on your bike.
2. You must (wears) a seat belt in your car.
3. You should (helped) your parents.
4. You (should) tell your password to everyone.

6

Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

you need to wear a helmet on your bike

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Air pollution

Guiding words:

(cars - pollution - chemicals - dangerous)

Help your child deal with such questions

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term / 189

Listening Texts

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

In the city, the smoke from the cars covered the stars. The noise was incredibly loud. The city is exciting but it's too scary. The country life is quieter. It is cleaner than the city.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Grandpa says that his mom and dad drove gas cars. They were very noisy. Our town had a cleaner area, but it was very old. My dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays. Our town is different now.

Activities on Unit (7)

The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. It's about 6,670 kilometers long. It is like travelling to the center of the earth. The Nile has two branches in Egypt.

Al-Azhar Corner

1) The Nile is the longest river in the world. It has two branches in Egypt. The Nile crocodile lives in it.

-) I'm Younis. I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I put on a blue T-shirt and gray pants.

Unit (8)

Lesson (2)

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water. We saw lots of fish and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish.

Lesson (3)

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. Many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year.

Lessons (4 & 5)

We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

Activities on Unit (8)

Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy. People say Eid Mubarak to their friends.

People go to the mosque and spend time with their families. They eat delicious food and celebrate!

Al-Azhar Corner

1) Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandparents who live by the sea, we saw lots of fish.

-) Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great grandma was 90 years old! All my family came together to celebrate.

Listening Texts

Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

Musical chairs is a game in which you run but be ready to sit! How to play: put out some chairs. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. Players run around the chairs.

When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without the chair is 'out'. Take away one chair and play again.

Lesson (3)

We make a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. And of course, we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

Activities on Unit (5)

More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. This means we are full of energy. We are helpful to each other and we are very friendly to visitors. We are very hospitable people.

Al Azhar Corner

1) The Egyptian food can be described with one word: wonderful. The most famous is ful medames. Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup.

2) In musical chairs, run but be ready to sit. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. The player without the chair is out.

Activities on Review (3)

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. The sea was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!

Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found information. Our teacher, Miss Lamia, loved our presentation. Hooray!

Lesson (2)

Magdy started a new school. He had a problem with online bullying. Sherif said that Magdy was stupid. I talked to his teacher. Now Magdy is happy.

Lesson (3)

Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad because her children love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

Listening Texts

Activities on Unit (10)

Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found information. I worked with my friend, Yara. Our teacher, Miss Lamia, loved our presentation.

Al-Azhar Corner

1) Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into library website and I created a strong password. I got the information.

-) Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

There are many kinds of transportation. When I travel by plane, I go through the air. When I travel by ship and boat, I'm on the water. When I travel by bus and taxi, I'm on the road. I travel to Luxor from Cairo by train.

Lesson (2)

Most children need to know how to be safe on the road. Here are some tips:

- You need a helmet on your bike.
- You need a seat belt in your car.
- You need to look left and right.
- You need a green light to cross the road.

Lesson (3)

In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air. To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.

Activities on Unit (11)

Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind. Their father is a teacher. He works in a school in the city.

Al-Azhar Corner

1) My favorite transportation is a ship. I love travelling on water. I go to school on foot.

-) Mazen and Dalia are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind.

Activities on Review (4)

-) It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You should accept to be friends only with people you know. You shouldn't share your personal information.

Listening Texts

AL-BANER

CONVINCING

Final Review



Parents' Guide

4th
Primary
2024

LANGUAGE FOCUS

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

- We **played** football on this street.

- He **pulled** out an old, metal box.

Form التكوين

يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل، أي:

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

يضاف (d, ed, ied) إلى الفعل المنتظم.

like → liked

pull → pulled

carry → carried

Spelling Notes:

١- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يضاف (d) فقط.

like → liked

live → lived

٢- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ثم نضيف (ied).

bury → buried

study → studied

٣- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف متحرك يتم إضافة (ed) للفعل.

play → played

stay → stayed

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقاً بحرف متحرك، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

stop → stopped

travel → travelled

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي

am / is → was

are → were

swim → swam

see → saw

Language

Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + Inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We **didn't play** football on this street

- He **didn't bury** the box.

Questions

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Did + subject (الفاعل) + Inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

e.g. **Did you do** your homework?

- Yes, I **did**.

- No, I **didn't**.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + Inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

e.g. **When did you get up?**

- I **got up** at seven o'clock.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday

ago أمس

last (week/...)

in the past (الماضي / الأسبق)

e.g. I **studied** English yesterday.

- Last Friday, he **played** football.

- Cairo **was** quiet many years ago.

Verb to (be) in the past

was

were

I / He / She / It / A singular noun + was

e.g. - It **was** very quiet when I lived here.

We / You / They / A plural noun + were

e.g. - They **were** at the museum yesterday.

Negative النفي

He / She / It + was not (wasn't)

e.g. - Grandpa's village **wasn't** very noisy.

We / You / They + were not (weren't)

e.g. - There **weren't** any cars on the street.

Questions

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Was + (he / she / it / a singular noun) ... ?e.g. - **Was** Grandpa very excited?- Yes, he **was**. - No, he **wasn't**.**Were** + (we / you / they / a plural noun) ... ?e.g. - **Were** they in the village?- Yes, they **were**. - No, they **weren't**.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
help	يساعد	helped	serve	يقدم	served
need	يحتاج	needed	listen	يستمع	listened
cry	يبكي	cried	work	يعمل	worked
pull	يسحب	pulled	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
bury	يدفن	buried	use	يستخدم	used
walk	يمشي	walked	taste	يتذوق	tasted
study	يذاكر	studied	wrap	يلف / يغلف	wrapped
cross	يعبر	crossed	remember	يتذكر	remembered
look	ينظر	looked	try	يحاول	tried
wait	ينتظر	waited	talk	يتكلم	talked
rain	تمطر	rained	click on	ينقر على	clicked on
cover	يغطي	covered	decorate	يزين	decorated
carry	يحمل	carried	represent	يمثل	represented
want	يريد	wanted	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
stay	يقوم / يبقى	stayed	snow	تتلعج	snowed
happen	يحدث	happened	push	يدفع	pushed
ask	يسأل	asked	join	ينضم إلى	joined
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	laugh	يضحك	laughed
tag	يشير	tagged	share	يشارك	shared
bully	يتنمر	bullied	watch	يشاهد	watched

Help your child revise the conjugation of verbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع تصريف الأفعال.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

5

Final Revision

Present	Past	Present	Past
move ينحرك/ينتقل	moved	post يرسل بالبريد	posted
travel يسافر	travelled	upload يرفع على النت	uploaded
follow يتبع	followed	stop يتوقف عن	stopped
kill يقتل	killed	replace يستبدل	replaced
harm يضر/يؤذي	harm	thank يشكر	thanked
save ينقذ	saved	decide يقرر	decided
breathe يتنفس	breathed	pollute يلوّث	polluted
message يرسل رسالة	messaged	solve يحل	solved
copy ينسخ	copied	learn يتعلم	learned
chat يتحدث	chatted	log into يسجل دخول	logged into
cough يكح/يسعل	coughed	call يتصل	called
improve يحسن	improved	increase يزداد/يزيد	increased
invite يدعو	invited	turn on يشغل	turned on
provide يمد/يزود	provided	reduce يقلل	reduced

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
ride يركب	rode	choose يختار	chose
write يكتب	wrote	meet يقابل	met
send يرسل	sent	keep يحافظ على	kept
get يحصل على	got	fall يقع	fell
make يصنع	made	sit يجلس	sat
spend يقضي	spent	fly يطير	flew

Language

Present		Past		Present		Past	
hurt	يؤلم / يؤدي	hurt		grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew	نمى / زرع
come	يآي	came		wear	يرتدي	wore	ارتدى
sell	يبيع	sold		have / has	يمتلك / يتناول	had	امتلك / تناول
dig	يحفر	dug		break	يكسر	broke	كسر
say	يقول	said		get up	يستيقظ	got up	استيقظ
tell	يخبر	told		am / is	يكون	was	كان
give	يعطي	gave		are	يكونوا	were	كانوا
know	يعرف	knew		put on	يلبس / يرتدي	put on	لبس / ارتدى
hold	يمسك	held		throw	يلقي / يرمي	threw	لقى / رمى
run	يجري	ran		win	يفوز	won	فاز
go	يذهب	went		drive	يقود / يسوق	drove	قود / ساق
drink	يشرب	drank		take off	يخلع	took off	خلع
think	يعتقد	thought		leave	يغادر	left	غادر
read	يقرا	read		swim	يسبح	swam	سبح
eat	ياكل	ate		speak	يتحدث	spoke	تحدث
find	يجد	found		take	ياخذ	took	أخذ
sing	يغني	sang		hide	يخفي	hid	خفي
feel	يشعر	felt		see	يرى	saw	رأى

Help your child revise the conjugation of verbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع تصريف الأفعال.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 7

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Grandpa very excited yesterday.
a) was b) were c) be d) is
2. Last holiday, we in the village.
a) was b) were c) are d) is
3. was very quiet.
a) You b) It c) They d) We
4. There lots of visitors in the hotel last year.
a) was b) is c) were d) are
5. In the past, there no planes.
a) is b) was c) were d) are
6. I eight years old when I buried the box.
a) is b) was c) were d) am
7. were very happy yesterday.
a) They b) It c) He d) She
8. I seven years old last year.
a) was b) were c) are d) is
9. We math yesterday.
a) study b) studied c) studies d) studying
10. Last week, we to Damietta.
a) go b) goes c) went d) going
11. Grandpa by the sea in the past.
a) lived b) living c) lives d) live

Language

12. Last summer, Dad a fish.
a) catch b) catches c) catching d) caught
13. Yesterday, they pizza.
a) eat b) ate c) eats d) eaten
14. The boys happy two days ago.
a) feel b) feeling c) feels d) felt
15. It hot yesterday.
a) was b) are c) were d) is
16. I a cake, but I used salt instead of sugar.
a) make b) made c) makes d) making
17. Ali had his swimming test yesterday. He 50 meters.
a) swims b) swim c) swimming d) swam
18. They too many candies last week.
a) ate b) eating c) eats d) eaten
19. Yesterday, they in the park.
a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
20. We all a song in the class yesterday.
a) sings b) sang c) singing d) will sing
21. We a huge picnic last Friday.
a) has b) had c) have d) having
22. We a play last week.
a) see b) saw c) seen d) sees
23. Mum me to take a shower because I was covered in mud.
a) tell b) told c) telling d) tells

Final Revision

24. The bird up high into the sky.
a) fly b) flying c) flew d) flown
25., we ate Ful Medames.
a) Yesterday b) Now c) Tomorrow d) Next
26. Last week my sister an email to Grandma.
a) send b) sent c) sending d) sends
27. When you get up yesterday?
a) did b) do c) does d) done
28. What subjects did you yesterday?
a) study b) studies c) studied d) studying
29. you at home yesterday?
a) Was b) Are c) Were d) Is
30. you like your first day of school?
a) Does b) Doing c) Did d) Is
31. Where did you last night?
a) go b) goes c) gone d) went
32. Why were surprised?
a) he b) she c) it d) they
33. My great-grandma 90 years old two years ago.
a) is b) are c) was d) were
34. We didn't football yesterday.
a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
35. My sister didn't the ball.
a) threw b) thrown c) throws d) throw

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We (be) in the village last summer.
2. There (be) no metro in the past.
3. Yesterday, he (go) to the park.
4. They (study) math last Sunday.
5. Grandpa (catch) a fish two days ago.
6. I (see) a great movie last night.
7. Sara (eat) many sweets. She felt sick.
8. The girls (sing) a song in the class yesterday.
9. They didn't (swam) in the sea.
10. How did you (felt)?
11. Did you (helps) your mother?
12. Heba (gets) up at seven o'clock yesterday.
13. Ali (visit) his uncle last week.
14. Why did the mice (had) to run away?
15. Younis (live) in Aswan ten years ago.
16. We (play) football last Friday.
17. We didn't (went) to Damietta.
18. (Do) catch fish yesterday?
19. I (be) very tired last night.
20. Mona (drink) a carton of juice last Monday.

3

Complete the table.

أكمل الجدول.

Present	Past	Present	Past
travel	.....	celebrate	.....
live	.....	serve	.....
pull	.....	remember	decorated
.....	played	study	.....
.....	pushed		

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AJ-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

11

4 Change into negative.

حول إلى اللفي.

1. It was very quiet.
2. They were very excited.
3. I saw my friends at the party.
4. They studied English yesterday.
5. He saw a jellyfish last summer.
6. Sara felt very sad.
7. The day was long.
8. I lived in Aswan.

5 Make questions.

كوّن أسئلة.

1. Yes, he was very excited.
2. No, they weren't at the park.
3. Hany went to the party yesterday.
4. We ate pizza last week.
5. I visited Aswan last year.

(Where?)

(What?)

(When?)

Suffix (-ful)

اللاحقة

We can make an adjective by adding **-ful** to the end of a verb or a noun.

يمكننا تكوين الصفة بإضافة المقطع (ful) إلى نهاية الفعل أو الاسم.

Word		Adjective	
care (v) (n)	يهتم / يحرص على / اهتمام	careful	حريص
pain (n)	ألم	painful	مؤلم
beauty (n)	الجمال	beautiful	جميل
help (v)	يساعد	helpful	متعاون
wonder (v)	يتعجب - يتساءل	wonderful	رائع
use (v)	يستخدم	useful	مفيد
color (n/v)	لون / يلون	colorful	زاهي الألوان / ملون

Examples

- I am very careful when I go online.
- I hurt my leg. It's very painful.
- Alia's dress is beautiful. We all love it.
- These tools are very useful for fixing our door.
- That shirt has red, blue and green stripes. It's very colorful.
- Learning about Egypt is wonderful. It has an amazing history.

General Activities

1 Complete the table.

أكمل الجدول

Word	Adjective
beauty	.....
.....	helpful
wonder	.....
color	.....
.....	useful
care	.....
.....	painful

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Adam is very He helped me carry the bags.
a) help b) helpless c) helpful d) helps
- Be when you cross the street.
a) careful b) beautiful c) painful d) useful
- Toka's necklace is I love it.
a) helpful b) careful c) beautiful d) painful
- He hurt his arm. It's very
a) pain b) friendly c) useful d) painful
- That bird is very
a) care b) color c) colorful d) colors
- I think computers are
a) use b) using c) useful d) uses

Final Revision

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I am (care) when I go online.
2. Her dress is very (beauty).
3. My tooth hurts. It's very (pain).
4. The computer is very (use).
5. The parrot is (color).
6. My grandpa is (help).
7. My mother's food is (wonder).
8. I'm proud of my brother. He is (success).

4

Match the word with the adjective.

صل الكلمة بالصفة.

- | | |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1) wonder | a) helpful |
| 2) care | b) colorful |
| 3) color | c) wonderful |
| 4) help | d) careful |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

5

Put the word in a sentence.

ضع الكلمة في جملة.

1) careful



I am careful when I go online.

2) beautiful



.....

3) painful



.....

4) useful



.....

5) colorful



.....

6) helpful



.....

7) wonderful



.....

Modal verbs

الأفعال الناقصة

1 For advice للنصيحة

Subject (فاعل) + should + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (should) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من المفيد لنا القيام بها.

e.g. I should only give my phone number to my friends.

e.g. You should turn your phone off at night.

Subject (فاعل) + shouldn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (shouldn't) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي ليس من المفيد لنا القيام بها.

e.g. I shouldn't use my phone late at night.

e.g. You shouldn't make new friends online with people you don't know.

2 For necessity للضرورة

Subject (فاعل) + need to + Inf. (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم الفعل (need) لنبين أهمية أو ضرورة عمل شيء ما.

e.g. You need to look left and right when you cross a road.

Subject (فاعل) + need + noun. (اسم)

e.g. You need a helmet on your bike.

3 For obligation **للإلزام**

نستخدم (must / mustn't) للتعبير عن الإلزام بفعل شيء أو عدم فعله.

Subject (فاعل) + must + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We **must follow** road signs.

e.g. We **must learn** to help others.

Subject (فاعل) + mustn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. You **mustn't run** on the road.

e.g. You **mustn't play** with matches.

4 For ability **للقدرة**

Subject (فاعل) + can + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (can) للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شيء.

e.g. We **can plant** more trees to help us breathe better.

e.g. We **can ride** bikes to help the environment.

Subject (فاعل) + can't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (can't) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على فعل شيء ما أو عدم السماح بفعل شيء ما.

e.g. You **can't swim** in the canal.

e.g. You **can't paint** on the wall.

e.g. You **can't ride** a bike here.

General Activities

1 Put (should - shouldn't).

ضم (should - shouldn't).

1. You have a very strong password.
2. You only speak to people you know online.
3. You speak to strangers on the internet.
4. You be a bully online.
5. You turn your phone off at night.

2 Look at the signs and put (can - can't).

انظر إلى اللافتات و ضم (can - can't).



You swim here.



You go straight and turn right.



You ride your bike here.



You park here.



We plant more trees.

3 Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I talk to someone I don't know online.
a) must b) should c) shouldn't d) can
2. You listen for cars before you cross the road.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) must d) mustn't
3. You wear a seat belt in a car.
a) must b) can't c) shouldn't d) need

4. I have a strong password.
a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) must d) can't
5. You use your phone late at night.
a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) can
6. I only give my phone number to my friends.
a) can't b) should c) shouldn't d) mustn't
7. You shouldn't your friends online.
a) bully b) bullied c) bullies d) bullying
8. I must the road signs.
a) follow b) follows c) followed d) following

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I should (turns) my phone off at night.
2. I (need) look left and right.
3. You can (goes) straight and turn right.
4. We must (listens) for cars before we cross the road.
5. You (shouldn't) have a strong password.
6. You (must) smoke in the hospital.
7. You should (sleeps) early.
8. We (need to) a green light to cross the road.
9. We (shouldn't) be careful on roads.
10. We should (wore) a seat belt in the car.
11. We (shouldn't) follow the road signs.
12. You must (crossed) the road at the crosswalk.
13. We can (had) many plants on the balcony.
14. You (need) take the bus.
15. We (must) speak loudly in the library.
16. You should (got) enough sleep.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

19

Unit (7)

This is where I live

Vocabulary

the Nile	النيل	river	نهر	delighted	مسرور مبتهج
building	مبنى	village	قرية	excited	متحمس
city	مدينة	curious	شغوف	mouse/mice	فأر - فئران
desert	صحراء	visitors	زائرين	moral	الدرس المستفاد
branches	فروع	nervous	متوتر	bright lights	أضواء ساطعة
forest	غابة	quiet	هادئ	catch a train	يلحق القطار
mountain	جبل	metal box	صندوق معدني	the country	الريف
oasis	واحة	pleased	مسرور	fraction	كسر

Language

The Past Simple Tense

Usage

* يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

e.g. We **played** football on this street.

Form - The second form of the verb.

* التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Negative

Subject (فاعل) + **didn't** + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We **didn't play** football on this street.

(Yes / No) question **Did** + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ... ?

e.g. **Did you go** to the market? - **Yes, I did.** - **No, I didn't.**

Wh- question Q.W + **did** + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ... ?

e.g. **When did you get up?** e.g. I **got up** at seven o'clock.

Keywords

yesterday

أمس ago

منذ

last (week / ...)

(الأسبوع / ...) الماضي in the past

في الماضي

e.g. - I **studied** English yesterday.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The Nile is the river in the world.
a) longest b) shortest c) smallest d) slowest
- The is 6.670 kilometers long.
a) tower b) Nile c) lake d) sea
- The Nile is for different fish, birds and turtles.
a) building b) apartment c) home d) garden
- The Nile lives in it.
a) cow b) donkey c) lion d) crocodile

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I lived in
a) Cairo b) Giza c) Tanta d) Aswan
- I was very
a) happy b) thirsty c) nervous d) hungry
- I liked staying at with my family.
a) home b) library c) park d) garden
- I wanted to play with my
a) dogs b) toys c) friends d) cats

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The Nile is the river in the world.
a) longest b) shortest c) longer d) smallest
- Last year I my grandpa.
a) visit b) visited c) visits d) visiting
- The Nile has two in Egypt
a) animals b) birds c) fish d) brar

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

21

4. I was at school. I didn't want to go.
a) hungry b) nervous c) hot d) cold
5. $\frac{2}{4}$ is $\frac{4}{8}$.
a) bigger than b) less than c) the same as d) smaller than
6. My grandpa in a village when he was young.
a) live b) living c) lived d) lives
7. There no cars in the past.
a) is b) was c) were d) are
8. There a shopping area, but it was very old.
a) is b) was c) were d) has
9. I live in a There are tall buildings.
a) village b) town c) city d) desert
10. The lives in the Nile.
a) whale b) bear c) monkey d) crocodile
11. Our school has a big metal at the front.
a) book b) desk c) chair d) gate
12. The city is full of lights.
a) dark b) pale c) bright d) low
13. We football yesterday.
a) play b) played c) playing d) plays
14. We can a train at eight to the city.
a) make b) go c) play d) catch
15. Cars that use electricity are much
a) quieter b) noisier c) louder d) hotter
16. I my box of memories here.
a) walked b) buried c) visited d) talked

3

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

street - cars - old - plant - quiet

My father's house was in a village in Aswan. The street was
 1) in the past. Now there are lots of 2) and
 trucks. My father and his friends played football on this
 3) Now there isn't enough space. When my father
 was a child, he helped his friend to 4) a small tree on
 the side of the street.

-

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

branches - crocodile - Earth - lion - longest

The Nile brings the life to the whole Egypt. It's the 1)
 river in the world. It's about 6,670 kilometers long. It's like
 travelling to the center of the 2) It has two
 3) in Egypt. The Nile 4) lives in it.

-

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

weren't - near - next - moved - quiet

Last year I visited my Grandpa's village. It was a 1)
 and beautiful place. There were lots of trees, but there 2)
 any trains. Grandpa's parents 3) to this village wh
 was three. He played football 4) his home.

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I remember my first day of school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) I carried my to school.
a) books b) backpack c) box d) shoes
- 2) The teacher was very
a) quiet b) kind c) sad d) happy

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) How did you go to school?
- 4) What did you study at school?

-

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds. The city mouse said, 'Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see?' The country mouse was delighted and very excited. The city mouse stopped eating and said, 'There's no reason to wait. We can catch a train at eight.'

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) The word "delighted" means
a) unhappy b) sad c) pleased d) depressed
- 2) The country mouse gave his friend and seeds.
a) leaves b) grass c) roots d) flowers

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Where did the country mouse live?
- 4) When can they catch a train?

Unit (7)

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. How did you (felt) at school?
2. I (move) to this village when I was five.
3. I didn't (wants) to go to school.
4. What (do) Ali wear last Sunday?
5. Mom (walks) to work yesterday.
6. We (study) math two hours ago.
7. I (be) eight years old when I buried the box of memories.
8. (Do) you go to school yesterday?
9. When did you (got) up?
10. Last weekend I (visit) my uncle.

6

Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1) the Nile is very long

2) we are proud of our country Egypt

7

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إشارية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your town then and now

Guiding words:

(buildings - cars - shopping - quiet)

Your first day of school

Guiding words:

(remember - six - put on - nervous - teacher)

Quantifiers محددات الكمية

a carton of juice	علبة من العصير	a bar of soap	قطعة صابون
a packet of cookies	عبوة بسكويت	a bottle of water	زجاجة ماء
a slice of meat	شريحة لحم	a slice of cake	قطعة كيك
a piece of cheese	قطعة من الجبن	a carton of milk	عبوة حليب
a bar of chocolate	قالب شيكولاتة	a piece of bread	قطعة خبز

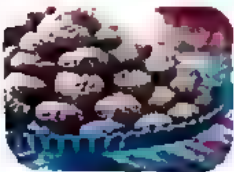
Others

Shawwal	شهر شوال	fast	يصوم	poem	قصيدة
kahk	كحك	grandma	جدة	Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر
mosque	مسجد	friendly	ودود	surprised	مدهش
celebration	احتفال	picnic	نزهة / وجبة	decorate	يزين

Social Studies



Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.



Kahk are delicious cookies.



All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim.



During Sham El-Nessim, people eat fesikh and colored eggs.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I have with my family every day.
a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) snacks
2. I like to have a of cookies.
a) slice b) packet c) bar d) bottle
3. My father likes to have a slice of
a) cookies b) meat c) cake d) cheese
4. My sister likes to have a of chocolate.
a) piece b) bottle c) packet d) bar

2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I went to the last night.
a) zoo b) park c) cinema d) school
2. We went in a
a) taxi b) bus c) car d) train
3. We a great movie.
a) played b) acted c) had d) saw
4. We went to a good
a) park b) restaurant c) café d) garden

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Eid Al-Fitr comes after
a) spring b) winter c) Ramadan d) Shawwal
2. Muslims during the day in Ramadan.
a) eat b) swim c) fast d) drink
3. She drank a of water.
a) piece b) bar c) bottle d) tank

4. We colored _____ in Sham El-Nessim.
a) eggs b) kahk c) meat d) sweets
5. I have a _____ of milk.
a) packet b) bottle c) slice d) bar
6. We _____ in the sea yesterday.
a) swim b) swimming c) swims d) swam
7. Last weekend, we _____ to Damietta.
a) went b) go c) goes d) going
8. Yesterday, grandpa _____ a fish.
a) catch b) catches c) catching d) caught
9. We _____ a good film a week ago.
a) see b) sees c) seen d) saw
10. I _____ a large meal last night.
a) eat b) eats c) eaten d) ate
11. I want a _____ of chocolate.
a) bar b) carton c) bottle d) glass
12. To _____ is not to eat or drink.
a) sleep b) run c) fast d) play
13. We stayed in a hotel _____ the sea.
a) of b) in c) with d) by
14. Muslims fast _____ the day in Ramadan.
a) after b) before c) at d) during
15. Heba bought kahk from a _____.
a) bakery b) zoo c) school d) park
16. My _____-grandma is my grandma's mother.
a) small b) little c) great d) short

Unit (8)

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق

great - sunset - Ramadan - fast - Sharwa'

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called
1) Muslims 2) during the day. This means
they don't eat or drink until 3) Ramadan is a time to
help other people. It's a 4) month.

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق

sang - swam - play - remember - caught

Last year, we went to the beach. We 1) in the water,
which was deep and blue. We 2) a song. My grandpa
3) lots of fish. We felt happy. It was a day to 4)
We will go again soon.

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق

bottle - a slice - chocolate - bar - cookies

I had fun at the party. I drank some juice. I only had 1)
of cake. I ate a packet of 2) and a piece of cheese.
I ate a bar of 3) After that, I was thirsty so I
a 4) of water.

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

In many countries, people celebrate Christmas. It is a special festival. People meet together to celebrate. People decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always green. The trees represent new life. People decorate the trees with lights, colored balls, and stars.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) The Christmas trees are always
 a) red b) yellow c) green d) pink
- 2) People decorate the trees with colored
 a) dolls b) eggs c) kites d) balls

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What is the main idea of the text?
- 4) Why do people meet together?

-

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water. It was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish. We ate it and had a healthy dessert. We saw some old photos and sang a song. We felt happy. It was a day to remember. We like to go there again.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) Last weekend we went to
 a) Giza b) Damietta c) Cairo d) Luxor
- 2) My grandparents live by the
 a) sea b) park c) hospital d) zoo

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) How was the water?
- 4) What did Grandpa catch?

Unit (8)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. They (eat) pizza yesterday.
2. My father (catch) a lot of fish last Friday.
3. Last night we (see) old videos.
4. What did you (bought)?
5. I (drink) a bottle of juice yesterday.
6. Last year I (swim) in the river.
7. My father (catch) a train to Aswan two days ago.
8. I went to the beach last year. It (be) fun!
9. I (go) to bed at 8 o'clock last night.
10. I didn't (sang) a song in class today.

6 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للأجمل الآتية.

1) muslims fast during Ramadan

2) we eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Ramadan

Guiding words:

(before Eid - fast - don't eat - sunset - help)

A day to remember

Guiding words:

(grandpa's farm - fields - animals)

Unit (9)

What makes us special

Party games ألعاب جماعية

musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية	pass the parcel	لعبة تمرير الصرد
hide and seek	لعبة الاستعانة «الغميضة»	rope pulling	لعبة شد الحبل

Unusual festivals احتفالات غير عادية

Cheese rolling	مهرجان دحرجة الحين	La Tomatina	مهرجان الترشق بالطماطم
Kite festival	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية	Chinese New Year	رأس السنة الصينية

Egyptian food الطعام المصري

Ful Medames (beans)	فول مدمس	garlic	ثوم	olive oil	زيت الزيتون
basbousa	بسبوسة	syrup	شربات	semolina	سميد

Others كلمات أخرى

present	هدية	seeker	الباحث
traditional	تقليدي	proud of	فخور بـ
hospitable	مضيف/كريم	special	خاص / مميز
famous for	مشهور بـ	region	منطقة
wrap	يغلف	unwrap	يفتح
winner	فائز	invitation	دعوة
player	لاعب	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
national	قومي	guest	ضيف
history	تاريخ	address	عنوان

General Activities

General Activities

1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. In we make a lot of movies.
a) Egypt b) China c) France d) USA
2. We have who won important prizes.
a) teachers b) authors c) doctors d) pilots
3. We love in Egypt.
a) clothes b) food c) sports d) drinks
4. Ferial Abdeaziz a famous player.
a) football b) handball c) volleyball d) karate

2

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We all love to give
a) gifts b) prizes c) presents d) money
2. We presents.
a) wrap b) put c) send d) throw
3. In this game players sit in a
a) square b) circle c) rectangle d) triangle
4. The player who unwraps the present it.
a) breaks b) buys c) throws d) keeps

3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ali won the game. He is the
a) winner b) loser c) player d) actor
2. Ful Medames is a famous Egyptian
a) sport b) food c) color d) game
3. Egyptians are very
a) unkind b) helpless c) hospitable d) unfriendly

4. Egypt is famous its history.
a) for b) in c) on d) at
5. Basbousa is very with syrup.
a) sour b) spicy c) salty d) sweet
6. Alia's dress is We all love it.
a) helpful b) beautiful c) careful d) painful
7. Those tools are very for fixing our door.
a) painful b) beautiful c) careful d) useful
8. Learning about Egypt is It has an amazing history.
a) painful b) careful c) wonderful d) colorful
9. We to the park yesterday.
a) go b) going c) goes d) went
10. Everything was red in the Festival.
a) Kite b) Chinese c) La Tomatina d) Cheese
11. When we a present, we cover it with lots of paper.
a) open b) wrap c) unwrap d) listen
12. I like to fly
a) balls b) kites c) dolls d) tomatoes
13. I invited my friends to my party.
a) Monday b) birthday c) Saturday d) holiday
14. He some cheese last night.
a) eat b) eating c) ate d) eats
15. I hurt my leg. It's very!
a) careful b) beautiful c) painful d) useful
16. 90% of Egypt is
a) rivers b) desert c) forests d) ice

Unit (9)

3

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

garlic - fish - wonderful - served - Ful

Our food can be described with one word: 1) ! The most famous food is 2) Medames, beans cooked very slowly, 3) with lots of olive oil and 4)

-

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

in - five - out - chairs - music

How to start to play musical chairs. Put out some 1) If you have 6 players, you only need 2) chairs. You can play some 3) When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without the chair is 4)

-

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

Cheese - falling - kites - potatoes - tomatoes

There are many festivals around the world. The Kite festival is to fly different shapes of 1) In 2) rolling festival, they start running and 3) In La Tomatina festival, people throw 4) at each other. Everything is red.

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Egypt is a country which is famous for its history. We have wonderful foods like Ful Medames and Basbousa. We have authors who won important prizes. We also have famous karate players like Ferial Abdelaziz.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) The word "famous" means
 a) sad b) well known c) unkind d) unhappy
- 2) won important prizes.
 a) Authors b) Students c) Chefs d) Teachers

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What is Egypt famous for?
- 4) Who is a famous karate player?

-

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When we get together with our family and friends to celebrate something, the children often play games. Musical chairs is an interesting game. You can run but be ready to sit! If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. After that, play some music. The players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without a chair is out. Take away one chair and play again.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) The player without a chair is the
 a) first b) second c) winner d) loser
- 2) In the musical chairs game, the chairs should be than players.
 a) more b) most c) less d) little

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) How many chairs do you need for 7 players in the musical chairs?
 4) What is the general idea of the text?

Unit (9)

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Sara's necklace is (beauty).
2. Adam is very (help). He helped me carry the bags.
3. Be (care) when you cross the street.
4. Her dress has red, blue and green stripes. It's very..... (color).
5. I hurt my finger. It's very (pain).
6. Mona (wears) a nice dress last night.
7. My father (give) me a present last month.
8. I (don't) go to school yesterday.
9. Hend (win) the race in 2015.
10. I (fly) my kite last weekend.

6

Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1) sara's necklace is beautiful

2) adam is very helpful

7

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Playing games

Guiding words:

لعب (have fun - friends - respect rules - help others)

Your birthday party

Guiding words:

3rd May - house - cake - play - friends

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

(37)

Unit (10)

I enjoy my life

Social Media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

cell phone	هاتف محمول	tablet	تابلت
password	كلمة مرور	message	رسالة / بوسل رسالة
copy	ينسخ	chat	يدرّش
presentation	عرض تقديمي	chameleon	حرباء
log in / into	يسجل دخول	bully	يُثْمَر / الثمَر
contact	يتصل	have fun	يمرح
online	على الإنترنت	opinion	رأي
tag	يشير إلى / إشارة	neighbours	جيران
unhealthy	غير صحي	unhappy	غير سعيد
pros	مزايا	good for	مفيد لـ
cons	عيوب	bad for	ضار لـ

(✓) Pros of social media

- You can have fun.
- You can find information for your research / homework.
- You can learn interesting things.

(x) Cons of social media

- Some people can bully you.
- People you don't know can contact you.
- People can take your personal information.

Language Giving advice:

Subject (المفاعل) **+should** (ينبغي أن) **+inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (should) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- I should only give my phone number to my friends.

Subject (المفاعل) **+shouldn't** (لا ينبغي أن) **+inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (shouldn't) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من غير المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- We shouldn't sleep late.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Many people say that computer games are for children.
a) good b) bad c) healthy d) useful
2. Children can spend many hours on their
a) books b) stories c) computers d) cellphones
3. Children look at the of computers.
a) keyboard b) screen c) mouse d) hard
4. Good children go
a) inside b) indoors c) outside d) into homes

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Noha researched for her on her tablet.
a) homework b) project c) test d) presentation
2. Noha logged some websites.
a) with b) at c) by d) into
3. She wanted to choose a for her bedroom.
a) bed b) desk c) color d) carpet
4. Noha was
a) sad b) happy c) nervous d) angry

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. are interesting animals. They can change their color.
a) Chameleons b) Cows c) Camels d) Pandas
2. Remember to be Don't copy information.
a) delicious b) respectful c) interesting d) amazing
3. I only give my phone number to my friends.
a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) should d) not should

4. They logged into the library to get information.
a) phone b) number c) website d) class
5. What the matter?
a) is b) are c) were d) be
6. Using modern devices has and cons.
a) cans b) pros c) online d) coins
7. I should use passwords.
a) tall b) bad c) strong d) weak
8. It's to play computer games for a long time.
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) perfect
9. We keep our personal information secret.
a) not should b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't
10. We use our mobile phones late at night.
a) shouldn't b) must c) should d) do
11. Last week I homework about chameleons.
a) have b) has c) have d) had
12. You should your parents.
a) help b) helps c) helped d) helping
13. Some people can you online.
a) take b) pull c) bully d) push
14. The story is I don't like it.
a) interesting b) amazing c) boring d) fun
15. Chameleons can change their
a) color b) clothes c) shoes d) tails
16. I should turn my phone at night.
a) on b) off c) at d) in

3

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

cell phone - logged - word - password - information

Last week, I had some homework about chameleons.

I 1) into the library website. I created a 2)

I found some useful 3) I did research on my

4) because I can't use a tablet.

-

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

should - safe - unsafe - password - shouldn't

To stay safe online, you should keep your password secret. You

1) tell everyone your phone number. You 2)

accept to be friends only with people you know and you should

use a strong 3) You should stay 4) online.

-

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

problems - games - spend - outside - friends

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. They

can 1) many hours on their computers. They don't go

2) On the other hand in some games, children need

to solve 3) Children make 4) and play with

their families. I really like computer games.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My son Khaled loves computer games. He doesn't do his homework. He doesn't go outside. I don't know what to do. It's a big problem. It's unhealthy to play computer games for a long time. Children must play with each others and have fun.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) Khaled is my
 a) cousin b) son c) brother d) father
- 2) Playing computer games for a long time is
 a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) perfect

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What must children do?
- 4) What does Khaled love?

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Dalia. I'm in primary four. I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting. I logged into the library website and I created a password to get information. Chameleons change colors. They are the same color as the place where they are. They have amazing eyes and they can see all around.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) Dalia's research is about
 a) camels b) chameleons c) cats d) foxes
- 2) Dalia is in grade
 a) three b) four c) five d) six

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Why did Dalia log into the library website?
- 4) What do the chameleons have?

Unit (10)

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب بالشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. You should (being) safe online.
2. You shouldn't (spoke) to strangers on the internet.
3. You should (has) a strong password.
4. You (shouldn't) speak to people you know.
5. You should (turns) your phone off at night.
6. You can (shares) photos on social media.
7. You (should) give your password to everyone.
8. I lost my shoes. I'm (happy).
9. Eating too much candy is (healthy).
10. I think you should (ate) healthy food.

6

Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1) we check our cell phones every day

2) do you like computer games

7

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Computer games

Guiding words:

(interesting- tablet- unhealthy)

Staying safe online

Guiding words:

(contact- personal- password- secret)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 43

Unit (11)

What can we do?

Vocabulary

metro	مترو	transportation	وسائل لنقل	shocked	مصدوم
bus	أوتوبيس / حافلة	ambulance	عربة إسعاف	fell over	سقط
plane	طائرة	rail	سكة حديد	left	يسار
boat	قارب	in a hurry	في عجلة من أمره / متعجل	right	يمين
train	قطار	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	by bus	بالأوتوبيس
taxi	تاكسي	on foot	سراً على الأقدام	through air	عبر الجو

Phonics

cr



crash



crowd



crosswalk

tr



train



truck

Language

- You need a seat belt in your car.
- You need to look left and right.



You can go straight and turn right.



You can't swim here.



You must wait for the green light.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from **a, b, c, or d**.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Cities have many
a) plants b) cars c) planes d) trains
2. Cars make pollution.
a) water b) land c) air d) soil
3. We can't always see the, but they are dangerous.
a) chemicals b) cars c) trains d) ships
4. Air pollution is very to us.
a) important b) healthy c) useful d) dangerous

- Listen and circle the correct answer from **a, b, c, or d**.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My favorite transportation is a ..
a) train b) car c) ship d) bus
2. I love traveling on
a) water b) road c) air d) space
3. I enjoy watching the
a) gardens b) plants c) fish d) sea
4. All my like traveling by ship.
a) family b) friends c) neighbors d) team

2 Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c, or d**. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My brother comes to school car.
a) by b) on c) at d) in
2. We go to the airport to travel by
a) train b) car c) boat d) plane
3. Stop here and wait for a light.
a) green b) pink c) red d) yellow

4. A train moves on a
a) air b) road c) rail d) water
5. Road signs give you information about the road.
a) unnecessary b) important c) weak d) unimportant
6. We must for the green light before crossing the street.
a) waiting b) waits c) wait d) waited
7. We safe roads.
a) need b) don't need c) needing d) needs
8. We need look left and right before crossing the road.
a) for b) with c) in d) to
9. You follow the road signs.
a) aren't b) mustn't c) must d) doesn't
10. You must a helmet on your bike.
a) wear b) wore c) wears d) wearing
11. I love traveling by air. My favorite transportation is
a) car b) plane c) ship d) bus
12. We need roads.
a) safe b) dangerous c) bad d) damaged
13. You need a green light to the road.
a) play b) cross c) send d) visit
14. When Ali hurt his foot, Ahmed called for an
a) motorbike b) bus c) plane d) ambulance
15. You can straight and turn right.
a) go b) goes c) went d) going
16. Ali was late, so he was a hurry.
a) on b) in c) by d) at

Unit (11)

3

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

right - light - cap - helmet - seat belt

We need many important things to be safe on the road. We need a 1) on our bikes. We need a 2) in our cars. We need a green 3) to cross the road. We also need to look left and 4)

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

road - rail - ship - plane - water

I love traveling very much. When I travel by 1), I go through the air. When I travel by 2) and boat, I am on the 3), When I travel to Luxor from Cairo by train, I move on a 4)

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

share - bike - chemicals - sick - walk

Air pollution is very dangerous for us. We can get sick because of the 1) in the air. We can 2) cars with other people. We can go to school by 3) We can 4) to school, too.

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Many countries try to stop air pollution in their cities. Cars make air pollution. In London, England, parents don't drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near schools. In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) In _____, parents do not drive children to school.
 a) China b) England c) Egypt d) America
- 2) Cars make _____ pollution
 a) air b) water c) land d) sight

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Which transportation make air pollution?
 4) Mention two solutions to reduce air pollution.

-

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last week I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution. I liked her ideas and I did some research. I talked to my family about what we can do. We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister, Noura, walks to school because her school is nearer.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) I talked to my _____ about what we can do.
 a) teachers b) family c) friends d) sisters
- 2) I now go to school by _____
 a) car b) train c) bike d) plane

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What was Dr Helen talking about?
 4) How does Noura go to school?

48

Unit (11)

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. You (need to) a seat belt in your car.
2. I need to (bought) a present for my mother.
3. You need (in) get some information for your homework.
4. We (need to) safe roads.
5. You (need) look left and right.
6. You must (waited) for the green light before crossing the road.
7. You must (followed) road signs.
8. We (mustn't) wear seat belt in the car.
9. You mustn't (ran) on the road.
10. You must (wore) a helmet on the bike.

6

Punctuate the following sentences. جمع علامات الترقيم لتحصل على

1) why is Seleem meeting people

2) what did Hany do yesterday

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة (ثمانية عشر) كلمة عن:

A story you read

Guiding words:

(walk - school - crosswalk - careful - signs)

Road safety

Guiding words:

(listen for cars - crosswalk - seat belt - helmet)

English language performance tasks

المهام الأدائية

★ A traditional dish

Egypt is famous for many wonderful traditional dishes like (Ful Medames - Basbousa).

⇒ **Write about:**

The traditional dish you like most.

⇒ **Draw your traditional dish.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

★ A trip with your friends

It's end of year holiday. You want to do many activities. Some of your friends want to go to the beach. Some want to go to the museum. Some want to go to the zoo.

⇒ **Write about:**

The activity you want to do during the trip.

⇒ **Draw what you can see/ do in these places.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

★ Festivals

You are celebrating one of the festivals with your family and friends.

⇒ **Write about:**

- What do you do during it?
- How do you celebrate it?
- What do you eat during it?

⇒ **Draw a symbol for your favorite festival.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

★ Invitation

You want to invite your friends to your birthday party.

⇒ **Write an invitation including:**

(address - time and place - why to invite - what to wear - what to bring).

⇒ **Draw the invitation cover.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

Performance tasks

★ A leaflet

You want to help your friends know how to be safe online. You make a leaflet about "How to stay safe online".

⇒ **Write about:**

- What should you do online to be safe?
- What shouldn't you do?
- Give advice to your friends.

⇒ **Draw the leaflet you will share with your friends.**



★ Mother's Day

It's "Mother's Day". You want to make a present for your mom. You have some old things at home that you can recycle.

⇒ **Write about:**

- What things will you use?
- What will you do? (The steps).
- What is the product?

⇒ **Draw a picture of the present you make.**



Performance tasks

Help your child do these performance tasks.

ساعد طفلك أن يقوم بالمهام الأدائية.



Exam (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Many people say that computer are bad for children.
a) games b) movies c) plays d) tools
2. can spend many hours on their computers and tablets.
a) Babies b) Parents c) Children d) Friends
3. Parents say this is not for their children.
a) kind b) healthy c) bad d) friendly
4. Parents are
a) happy b) excited c) sad d) bad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We are of our beautiful country.
a) hard b) good c) proud d) bad
2. That shirt has red, blue and green stripes. It's very
a) colorful b) helpful c) useful d) painful
3. My aunt gave us lots of fruit and sweets at her house. She is
a) hospitable b) untidy c) painful d) bad
4. My sister is very She got the highest mark.
a) sad b) nervous c) pleased d) angry

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

played - space - nice - street - plant

My father's house was in a village in Aswan. The 1) was quiet in the past. Now there are lots of cars and trucks. My father and his friends 2) football on this street. Now there isn't enough 3) When my father was a child, he helped his friends to 4) a small tree on the side of the street. Now the tree is very big and beautiful. It's very nice.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (53)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Ahmed. I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I wore my black shoes and blue pants. I carried my backpack. I was very nervous. I want to play with toys. I didn't want to go to school.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Ahmed wore shoes.
a) brown b) red c) black d) blue
- Ahmed was
a) happy b) nervous c) sad d) excited

B) Answer the following questions.

- How old was Ahmed when he went to school?
- Did Ahmed want to go to school?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- You must (followed) road signs.
- Yesterday, we (eat) a chocolate cake.
- Ahmed is ill. He needs to (went) to the hospital.
- You should (saw) the doctor.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

i can t go to bed at 9 o'clock.

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

You want to invite your friends to your birthday party

Guiding words:

(music - my house - invitation - next Monday)

Exam (2)

لنص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Grandma's mom and dad drove gas
a) cars b) buses c) planes d) ships
- Gas cars were
a) quiet b) noisy c) healthy d) cleaner
- Now we have cars.
a) gas b) plastic c) electric d) metal
- Electric cars are much and quieter.
a) slower b) longer c) shorter d) cleaner

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Adam is very He helped me carry the bags.
a) colorful b) helpful c) tired d) sad
- I often travel car.
a) on b) at c) by d) in
- I use my to do my homework online.
a) tablet b) book c) pen d) notebook
- My sister went to the to take the plane to London.
a) station b) airport c) room d) school

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

special - spring - salted - winter - families

Sham El-Nessim is celebrated by Egyptians. It's a festival that celebrates the start of 1) We eat green onions and 2) fish during Sham El-Nessim. We color boiled eggs. We go to the parks with our 3) to have picnics. We play in the park. Sham El-Nessim is a very 4) day.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 55

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Cell phones help us with our lives. A cell phone is a kind of telephones. It's a very useful device for us. They are of different colors. Through the cell phone, we get and send news, play games and communicate. Pupils can do their homework. They can do researches and find information about different animals.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The text is about
a) tablets b) cell phones c) computers d) pens
- The word "useful" means
a) good b) bad c) angry d) sad

B) Answer the following questions.

- What can we do through the cell phone?
- Who can use cell phones to do the homework?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- We played and (swim) in the sea last year.
- We should (turns) our phones off at night.
- My mother (make) a delicious cake yesterday.
- You need to (wore) a helmet when you ride a bike.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

egypt is famous for its history

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

The River Nile

Guiding words:

(the longest river - home for)

Exam (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The chameleon is a kind of
a) reptiles b) birds c) fish d) plants
2. They have amazing
a) legs b) eyes c) arms d) teeth
3. They can change their
a) shapes b) sizes c) bodies d) colors
4. They insects and leaves.
a) drink b) change c) eat d) think

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The River Nile has two
a) forests b) villages c) seas d) branches
2. We need a of water.
a) piece b) bottle c) bar d) slice
3. I can my friends photos online.
a) tag b) play c) study d) move
4. I need to wear a when I ride my bike.
a) shirt b) helmet c) jacket d) cap

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

friends - in - by - foot - far

My name is Waleed. I go to school on 1) I like walking because I can meet my 2) My friend Adam goes to school 3) bus. His house is 4) from school.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (57)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

We should stop air pollution. We can have energy - saving light bulbs in our apartments. We can have many plants on our balcony. We decided to change some things as a family. Mom takes the bus to work. My brother walks to school because his school is near.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about how to
a) stop air pollution b) recycle c) write d) cook
2. My brother's school isn't
a) near b) far c) hot d) low

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Mention two things to stop air pollution.
4. How does mom go to work?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You should (keeps) your password secret.
2. I (fall) over and my friend helped me.
3. You need to (creates) a password.
4. Where did Aya (went) last year?

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

hide and seek is a very old game

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

(Sham El-Nessim)

Guiding words:

(park - play - salted fish - eggs - happy)

Exam (4)

لص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim
a) festival b) drink c) food d) game
2. It comes in the day of the 10th Islamic month.
a) second b) third c) first d) fourth
3. People eat to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr.
a) fish b) kahk c) eggs d) meat
4. People say "....." to their friends.
a) Eid Mubarak b) Happy New Year
c) Happy Birthday d) Goodbye

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The River Nile has branches in Egypt.
a) three b) two c) one d) four
2. My mother was very tired, she looked a bit
a) green b) yellow c) red d) black
3. I hurt my leg. It's very
a) helpful b) beautiful c) painful d) colorful
4. We can the train at night.
a) go b) catch c) run d) swim

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

player - out - music - run - sports

My favorite party game is the "Musical chairs". We put some chairs, play some 1), and the players 2) around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down and the 3) without a chair is "4)"

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (59)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I am Reem. I went to the beach with my family on the weekend. We were sad because there was a lot of plastic trash from people's houses on the beach. I talked to my mom and she advised me to talk about the problem at school. I and my friends started to find information about beach clean up in different places. Then, we went to the beach again and collected all the plastic trash. The beach is now clean. Sea animals and birds can live in a clean place.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The text is about
 a) beach clean up b) visiting Alexandria
 c) Mother's Day d) school
- Reem talked about the problem at
 a) the beach b) the club c) school d) home

B) Answer the following questions.

- Why were Reem and her family sad?
- What did Reem and her friends do?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- My mom (cooks) some vegetables last Sunday.
- We need to (used) energy-saving lightbulbs.
- You (shouldn't) stay safe online.
- Heba (be) excited yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

how many branches does the Nile have

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Guiding words:

Eid Al-Fitr
(kahk - festival)

Exam (5)

نص الاستماع في مادة الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It's important to be online.
a) safe b) dangerous c) bad d) useless
2. You should keep your secret.
a) address b) password c) number d) name
3. You share your personal information.
a) can b) should c) must d) shouldn't
4. You shouldn't to be friends with people you don't know.
a) share b) be c) accept d) keep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Heba the present to see what was inside.
a) wrapped b) unwrapped c) played d) sent
2. I played with my cousins.
a) foods b) games c) jobs d) drinks
3. Hend bought a of cookies yesterday.
a) packet b) bar c) slice d) bottle
4. Chemicals are
a) dangerous b) safe c) important d) healthy

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

bottle - cake - drank - ate - bar

I had fun at the party. I 1) some juice. I only had a slice of 2) I ate the packet of cookies and a piece of cheese. I ate a 3) of chocolate. After that, I was thirsty so I had a 4) of water.

Help your child deal with such questions

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (51)

4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last week, we went to Damietta to see grandma and grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the sea which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish. Grandpa caught a fish, which grandma made into a lovely dish. We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Last week, we went to
a) Luxor b) Cairo c) Aswan d) Damietta
- The dessert they had was
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) kind d) unkind

B) Answer the following questions.

- Why did you go to Damietta?
- What did grandpa catch?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- The village (is) very quiet when I lived here.
- Did Eman (does) her homework?
- You must (waited) for the green light to cross the road.
- You need (in) look left and right.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

I am making a presentation with mona

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Eid Al-Fitr

Guiding elements:

(When is Eid Al-Fitr? - How do we celebrate Eid Al-Fitr?)

Exam (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Last week we went to
a) Aswan b) Giza c) Cairo d) Damietta
2. Grandma and grandpa live by the
a) sea b) village c) tower d) pyramids
3. We saw a lots of
a) cats b) fish c) birds d) plants
4. Grandpa a fish.
a) bought b) ate c) caught d) made

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I bought a of water from the shop yesterday.
a) bottle b) packet c) slice d) bar
2. We should be of our beautiful country.
a) pain b) proud c) care d) cloud
3. Hend's dress is very We all love it!
a) beautiful b) useful c) careful d) helpful
4. To wrap a present is to it with lots of paper.
a) take b) cover c) play d) open

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Nile - green - desert - region - desert

Many people think that Egypt is only a 1) It's true but we also have 2) lands. Near the 3), it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in Sinai 4)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (63)



Scanned with OKEN Scanner

4

Read the following text then answer the questions.

I'm Ahmed. I live in a big city in Egypt with my family. The city is always noisy and crowded. It has a lot of pretty, bright lights but smoke and noise are everywhere. In summer, we visit our grandpa in the country. It is always quiet and clean. There are a lot of trees and grass. Life is slow. We love the country rather than the city.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Ahmed visits grandpa in the
a) spring b) winter c) summer d) fall
- The city is always
a) slow b) quiet c) noisy d) bad

B) Answer the following questions.

- How is life in the country?
- What does Ahmed like more, the city or the country?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Yesterday I didn't (walked) to school.
- I (shouldn't) keep my password secret.
- When you go online, you need to be (care) .
- How (do) you go to the library yesterday?

6

Punctuate the following sentence.

what was on the table

7

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

A festival we celebrate in Egypt

Guiding elements:

(Name of the festival - When is it? - What do people do, eat and wear?)

.....

.....

.....

.....

64

Final Revision

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Exam (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Two years ago, we had a very special
a) party b) festival c) ceremony d) holiday
2. My great-grandma was years old.
a) 70 b) 80 c) 90 d) 99
3. All my family came together to
a) work b) study c) celebrate d) play
4. The family chocolate cake.
a) drank b) gave c) spent d) had

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Young Egyptian people are full of
a) energy b) smoke c) cold d) plants
2. If you are not on road, you will have an accident.
a) useful b) careful c) colorful d) wonderful
3. They had a of meat.
a) slice b) bottle c) bar d) packet
4. My sister always asked a lot of questions. She is
a) stupid b) beautiful c) angry d) curious

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

shoe - crowded - noisy - quiet - shopping

Grandpa says that his mom and dad drove gas cars. They were very 1) Our town had a 2) area, but it was very old. My dad worked in a 3) store on Saturdays. Our town is different now. It is more modern but more 4)

4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. It's Egypt's oldest festival as ancient Egyptians celebrated it too. Sham El-Nessim is in April. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. At Sham El-Nessim, the weather is usually nice, so we go to the park and eat lots of nice food. We also color eggs.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. People color during the festival of Sham El-Nessim.
a) potatoes b) onions c) eggs d) fish
2. I celebrate Sham El-Nessim with my
a) friends b) family c) teachers d) aunts

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When is Sham El-Nessim?
4. What is the weather like at Sham El-Nessim?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We (go) to the beach yesterday.
2. We should (turned) our phones off at night.
3. I (buy) a new dress last week.
4. I need to (looks) at many websites to find a lot of information for my homework.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

what are the children doing

7 Write a paragraph of about **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

Country and city life

Guiding words:

(quiet - bright lights)

Exam (8)

نص الاجتماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The is very important.
a) Nile b) farm c) station d) airport
2. The Nile brings life to
a) France b) China c) Egypt d) India
3. The Nile is the river in the world.
a) shortest b) longest c) fastest d) tallest
4. The Nile has branches.
a) one b) two c) three d) four

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can photos online.
a) say b) share c) write d) cook
2. Rehab drank a of milk yesterday.
a) slice b) piece c) bottle d) bar
3. We travel on by ship or boat.
a) water b) rail c) road d) street
4. My father can the train at eight.
a) go b) catch c) travel d) run

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

store - gas - shopping - water - electricity

Our city has a shopping area, but I don't like 1)
Dad worked in a shoe 2) We drove 3)
cars in the past but now we have a car that uses 4)

4

Read the text and then answer the questions.

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I was very nervous. I didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants and black shoes. Mom and I walked to school. I studied math and played games; it was fun.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. In his first day of school, he was years old.
 a) six b) seven c) eight d) five
2. He walked to school with his
 a) brother b) dad c) mom d) sister

B) Answer the following questions.

1. What clothes did he put on?
2. What subject did he study?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. There (was) no cars in the past.
2. You need to (looking) left and right.
3. What games did you (played) yesterday?
4. You should (sleeping) early.

6

Read and complete the following sentence.

i don't go to school on Friday

7

Write a paragraph of about **EIGHTEEN (18) words** about:

(Your day)

Guiding words:

(get up - home - play games)

68

Final Revision

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Exam (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, and d.

1. My great-grandma was years old.
a) 60 b) 70 c) 80 d) 90
2. All my family together to celebrate.
a) sang b) came c) ran d) swam
3. The family ate , meat, fish, and fruit.
a) beans b) kahk c) eggs d) salad
4. The family had cake, too.
a) muffin b) ful c) chocolate d) noodles

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, and d.

1. We're having a spring at the school.
a) festival b) Eid c) fast d) class
2. There are lots of trees in the
a) desert b) river c) building d) forest
3. Taha drank a of water.
a) bottle b) can c) slice d) carton
4. We during the day in Ramadan.
a) fast b) drink c) eat d) sing

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

(desert - river - cold - water - hot)

Egypt is a beautiful country. It has a long 1)

We can get fresh 2) from it. Egypt also has a big

3) The desert climate is very 4)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

AL-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (69)

4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Nile river is very important in Egypt. It's the longest river in the world. It's about 6,675 kilometers long. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is the home for different kinds of animals. We should keep the Nile clean. The Nile brings us fresh water. Without the Nile there is no life. We all need the Nile to live.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The Nile is the river in the world.
a) longest b) tallest c) shortest d) long
- There are branches of the Nile in Egypt.
a) one b) three c) two d) four

B) Answer the following questions.

- How long is the Nile?
- What's the Nile home for?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- They (are) in the zoo yesterday.
- Rehab (swim) in the sea last weekend.
- Our food is (wonder) in Egypt.
- We should (is) proud of our country.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

my sisters have yellow hats

7 Write a paragraph of about **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

Sham El-Nessim

(Guiding words:

(celebrate - eggs - parks)

Exam (10)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The month before Eid is called
a) Ramadan b) Shawwal c) March d) October
2. Muslims during the day in Ramadan.
a) drink b) fast c) eat d) sleep
3. "Fast" means not to eat or until sunset.
a) make b) run c) sleep d) drink
4. In Ramadan, people think about the year.
a) next b) following c) past d) present

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Chameleons are the same color as the where they are.
a) place b) air c) kind d) world
2. The Nile has two in Egypt.
a) branches b) centers c) trees d) fish
3. I into the library website to get information.
a) created b) logged c) changed d) wrote
4. I go to school foot.
a) by b) in c) on d) to

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

wonderful - visitors - hospitable - bad - energy

More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30.
Egyptians are full of 1) They are helpful to each other.
They are very friendly to 2) and guests. They are very
3) people. Egyptian people are very 4)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (71)

4

Read the following text then answer the questions.

Our world has a big problem because of the air pollution. Experts talk about ideas to stop this problem. People must help experts to solve this problem. For example, we should plant more trees. We can have energy-saving light bulbs in our apartments and use public transportation.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- We should use transportation.
a) more b) less c) public d) crowded
- Experts talk about ideas to pollution.
a) help b) plant c) see d) stop

B) Answer the following questions.

- What problem does the world have?
- How can people help the experts?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- You should (cleans) your room.
- We (study) English yesterday.
- I didn't (wanted) to go back to school.
- You can't (swam) here.

6

Punctuate the following sentence.

which is your favorite transportation

7

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

The Nile

Guiding words:

(the longest - two branches)

72

Final Revision

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (11)

مع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Eid Al-Fitr is a muslim
a) festival b) holiday c) month d) party
2. It happens in the day of Shawwal.
a) first b) second c) third d) fifth
3. Many people make to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr.
a) fish b) kahk c) egg d) chicken
4. People go to the mosque and time with their families.
a) play b) stay c) spend d) take

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I want to my cousin and chat with him.
a) read b) speak c) talk d) message
2. I ate a of meat for lunch.
a) slice b) packet c) bottle d) bar
3. I wear the on my head when I ride my bike.
a) toy b) watch c) clothes d) helmet
4. A car travels the road.
a) by b) in c) on d) under

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

road - look - blue - green - need

It's important to be safe on the road. You 1) a helmet on your bike. You need a 2) light to cross the road. You need to 3) left and right before you cross the 4)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (73)

4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

There are different festivals around the world. In China, the New Year festival is the most important. It starts on 1st February and ends on 11th. La Tomatina is the strangest festival in Spain. People fight each other with tomatoes. Everything is red. They play and laugh. They wear old clothes. In Egypt, we have Sham El-Nessim which is a very special festival for Egyptian people in the beginning of spring.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Sham El-Nessim is celebrated in
a) Spain b) China c) Egypt d) India
- is the most important festival in China.
a) Eid Al-Fitr b) The New Year
c) Sham El-Nessim d) La Tomatina

B) Answer the following questions.

- What do people do in 'La Tomatina'?
- When does the New Year festival start?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- What (do) you do yesterday?
- Osama (walk) to school last Monday.
- We must (followed) road signs.
- You should (ate) healthy food.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

i love travelling on water

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

(Great-grandma's birthday party)

Guiding words:

(great-grandma - seventy - picnic - games - cousins - songs)

Exam (12)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Grandpa's village was very
a) quiet b) noisy c) crowded d) dirty
- There were no in the past.
a) trains b) cars c) buses d) planes
- Grandpa was when he buried the box of memories.
a) ten b) nine c) eight d) six
- Now, my grandpa is very
a) fast b) strong c) young d) old

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Sarah goes to her office foot.
a) on b) in c) by d) to
- We cross the road when the light is
a) red b) green c) blue d) yellow
- Mona was very tired, she looked a bit
a) green b) black c) white d) pink
- Tamer drank a of milk yesterday.
a) bottle b) bar c) piece d) slice

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

fish - sea - ate - sang - drank

Last week, we went to visit my grandpa He lives by the

- 1) We went by car. We swam and made castles. We saw lots of 2) We 3) lots of songs. We 4) ice cream. We were very happy.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term (75)

4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Our Egyptian food can be described with one word: wonderful! The most famous food is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic. When you want something sweet, you should try basbousa, a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup. Egyptian people are very hospitable.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ful Medames is served with olive oil and garlic.
a) drunk b) served c) played d) celebrated
2. The underlined word "wonderful" means very
a) ugly b) bad c) good d) cold

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can you eat when you want something sweet?
.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My mother (make) a delicious cake yesterday.
2. I didn't (did) my homework yesterday.
3. There (is) a shopping area in my village last year.
4. We (need to) a helmet on our bikes.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

mona had ice cream for dessert

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Air pollution

Guiding words:

(air pollution - walk - cycle - solar power)

Exam (13)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

- I put on a T-shirt.
a) green b) blue c) yellow d) red
- My drove me to school.
a) dad b) mom c) brother d) sister
- I was
a) happy b) nervous c) excited d) beautiful

2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

chameleons - color - home - are

Mom: What 1) you doing, Dalia?

Dalia: I am doing my 2)

Mom: What is it about?

Dalia: It is about 3)

Mom: What can they do?

Dalia: They can change their 4)

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches. There are many people living near the Nile. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

A) Answer the following questions.

1. Where do many people live?

2. What is the Nile home for?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

77



B) Choose the correct answer.

3. The Nile is the river in the world.
a) shortest b) longest c) tallest d) smallest
4. The Nile has branches.
a) two b) one c) four d) three
5. The crocodile is a
a) reptile b) bird c) human d) plant

4**Choose the correct answer.**

1. I drank a of water yesterday.
a) bar b) slice c) bottle d) bowl
2. I go to school foot.
a) on b) at c) in d) by
3. We should use a strong to stay safe online.
a) message b) chat c) password d) search
4. We can trees.
a) plan b) plants c) planting d) planted
5. My grandma in a small village when she was young.
a) live b) lived c) lives d) living

5**Reorder the words to make correct sentences.**

1. live - Where - mouse - did - the country - ?

2. turn off - should - at night - my - I - phone - .

3. a carton - drank - juice - Ali - of - .

4. must - signs - follow - road - We - the - .

5. your - What - favorite - festival - is - ?

Listening Texts

Unit (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It's about 6,670 kilometers long. The Nile is home for different fish, birds and turtles. One of the largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys. I didn't want to go to school.

Unit (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I have breakfast with my family every day. I like to have a packet of cookies. My father likes to have a slice of cake. My mother likes to have a piece of cheese. My sister likes to have a bar of chocolate.

2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I went to the cinema last night. I went with my friends. We went in a taxi. We saw a great movie. After the film we went to a good restaurant. We had a wonderful meal there. The prices were good. We had a lot of fun.

Unit (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

In Egypt we make a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. And of course we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of the very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

We all love to give presents. It's even more fun to open presents. How to play this game: Wrap a small present and cover it in lots and lots...and lots of paper. The players sit in a circle. Play some music. Players give the present to the next person as music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present takes off one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.

Unit (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Many people say that computer games are very bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Good children go outside.

2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Noha researched for her homework on her tablet. She logged into some websites with her password. She looked at photos to help her choose a color for her bedroom. She was happy.

Unit (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Air pollution is very dangerous to us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.

2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My favorite transportation is a ship. I love traveling on water. I enjoy watching the sea. I hear the sound of water only. I enjoy the fresh air from the sea. I can see many kinds of fish in water. All my family like traveling by ship.

Activities

Exam (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. Parents say this is not good for their children. Parents are sad.

Exam (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Grandma says that her mom and dad drove gas cars. They were very noisy. Now we have electric cars that use electricity and gas. They are much cleaner and quieter.

Exam (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The chameleons are a kind of reptiles. They are interesting. They have amazing eyes. They change their colors. They are the same color as the place where they are. They eat insects and leaves.

Exam (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. It comes in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. People eat kahk. People say "Eid Mubarak" to their friends.

Exam (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You shouldn't share your personal information. You shouldn't accept to be friends with people you don't know.

Exam (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Last week, we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We saw lots of fish. Grandpa caught a fish which Grandma made into a lovely dish.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. We ate salad, meat, fish and fruit. We had chocolate cake also.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Nile is very important. It brings life to Egypt. The Nile is the longest river in the world. It helps us to grow our food. It has two branches.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. We ate salad, meat, fish and fruit. We had chocolate cake, too.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. It happens in the first day of Shawwal. In Ramadan, people fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. Many people make kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. Kahk are delicious cookies. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families.

Exam (12)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Grandpa's village was very quiet. Now, there is a lot of people. There were no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. Grandpa was eight years old when he buried the box of memories. Now, Grandpa is very old.

Exam (13) خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I remember my first day of school. I put on a blue T-shirt and black shoes. My dad drove me to school. I was nervous. I didn't want to go. I want to stay at home and play with my toys.